

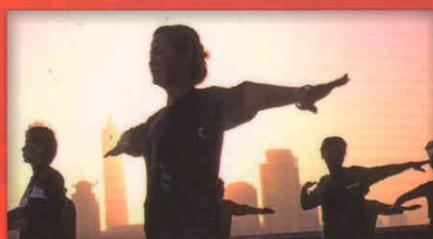
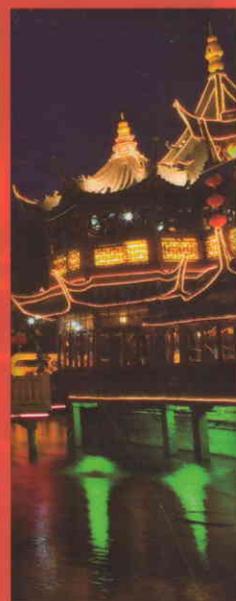
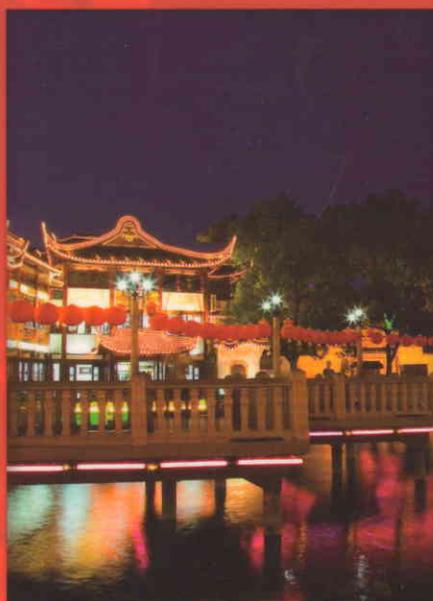
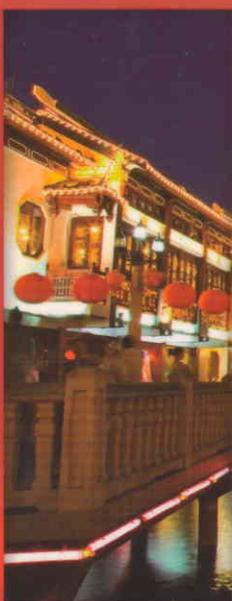
INCLUDES
AUDIO CD

Discover China



STUDENT'S BOOK ONE

学生用书1



走遍中国

学生用书

Macmillan Education
Between Towns Road, Oxford, OX4 3PP
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 9780230405950

Text © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010
Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010
Published by arrangement with Macmillan Publishers (China) Limited

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Project Planning: Bernadette Longley, Peng Donglin
Project management: Bernadette Longley, Hou Hui
Head author: Ding Anqi
Author team: Chen Xin, Jing Lili
Academic advisors: Simon Greenall, Huang Dian, C.K. Tang
Editors: Yan Lina, Wang Jianling, Thomas McGrenery and Mei Liew

Audio materials produced by Sky Productions

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce their artwork/photographic material:

Imagemore: pp19 (rm), 20 (br), 22 (bl), 23 (tr), 24 (background), 26 (a-c, e), 30 (t), 34 (background), 38 (la, b, d), 41 (ld), 42 (t), 44 (background), 49 (a, b), 50 (b), 54 (background), 56 (ltl, ltr, lm), 59 (rt), 60 (lt, rb), 62 (l), 63 (r), 66 (b), 67 (lt), 68 (background), 75 (la, c), 76 (t), 77 (top), 78 (background), 85 (la,b), 86 (lb), 88 (background), 90 (c), 95 (lb), 96 (rb), 98 (background), 104 (background), 112 (background), 116 (b, e), 119 (lb), 120 (l), 122 (l, background), 126 (b, d, e, f), 129 (b, c, d), 130 (l, bottom), 132 (background), 134 (ml, mr), 139 (la-d), 141 (t), 142 (background), 144 (r), 148 (background), 151 (br), 154 (bl); Tuweimei: pp26(d), 31 (a-d), 36 (la, r), 38 (lc, l, bottom), 41 (lb, c), 46 (rt), 48 (lt, rt), 49 (c, d), 56 (rt), 57 (la-f), 59 (rm), 62 (ra-c), 75 (lb, d), 85 (lc, d), 90 (a, b, d), 92 (ba-e), 95 (la, c, d), 100 (a, c, e), 103 (r), 106 (la, d), 109 (la, c, d), 116 (a, c, d, f), 119 (la, c, d), 126 (a, c), 129 (a), 134 (tr), 136 (a, b, c, d), 150, 151 (tl, tr), 152 (b), 153 (l, r), 154 (a-d), 155 (t), 156, 157 (tl, tr), 158 (b), 159 (r), 160 (br), 161 (t); Top Photo Corporation: pp14 (bottom), 17, 27, 37, 47, 81, 91, 105, 115, 122 (lc), 134 (tl), 135; China Foto Press: pp13 (bl), 33 (r), 36 (c), 40 (lb), 49 (l), 61, 109 (b), 110 (top), 142 (lt, lb); Corbis: pp31 (b) © Natacha Connan/Didier Baverel/Kipa/Corbis, 54 (br) © BARBARA GINDL/epa/Corbis, 54 (bl) © Cat's Collection/Corbis, 71 © Keren Su/Corbis, 125 © Justin Guariglia/Corbis; Photolibrary: pp151 (bl), 157 (tl); Simon Lorenz: p52.

Cover photographs by Panorama Media (tr), (m), (bl); Tuweimei (tl), (br)

Commissioned photographs © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010

We would also like to thank the following reviewers and teachers for their valuable and insightful comments:

Lening Liu (Professor in Chinese Language and Program Director at Columbia University), Huang Dian (Senior lecturer in Chinese at the University of Westminster and Chair of the British Chinese Language Teaching Society) and her pilot class, Dr. Song Lianyi (Principal Teaching Fellow in Chinese, China & Inner Asia Department, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London), Liao Liyun (Modern Foreign Language Academic Resources Coordinator, University College London) and her pilot class, and Liang Min-Min (Lecturer in Chinese, Massachusetts Institute of Technology), Betty Hung (Assistant Language Instructor, School of Chinese, The University of Hong Kong).

These materials may contain links for third party websites. We have no control over, and are not responsible for, the contents of such third party websites. Please use care when accessing them.

Although we have tried to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, in some cases this has not been possible. If contacted, we will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity.

Printed and bound in China

2015 2014 2013 2012
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Discover China



STUDENT'S BOOK ONE

学生用书1



MACMILLAN



Introduction

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course, specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students studying Chinese in English-speaking countries. It employs a communicative and integrated approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on communication in real contexts through pair work, group work and a variety of independent and integrated activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

Key features

Discover China's unique communicative course design includes a number of distinctive features:

- **Topic-driven content in real-life contexts** gets students engaged and motivated. The topics in each book are organized around the lives and travel experiences of five young students in China.
- **A truly communicative approach** lets students learn the language by using it in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally.
- **Structured and effective learning design** based on the sequence “presentation, practice and production”, with activities moving from controlled practice to personalized tasks, facilitates effective learning of the language.
- **Systematic vocabulary and grammar development** comes through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the *Hanyu Shuiping Kaoshi* (HSK test) and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework.
- **Student-centred grammar learning supplemented with detailed grammar reference** allows students to discover the rules for themselves through identifying patterns in the language samples. The grammar reference provides comprehensive and detailed explanations.
- **Meaningful and integrated character writing practice** through grouping characters with common radicals. These high-frequency characters are presented within the context of the unit theme.
- **Insights into Chinese culture**, through “Cultural Corner” sections linked to the unit topics, promoting a deeper cultural understanding. Fascinating full-colour photos, showing the real China, provide visual appeal and draw students into this diverse culture.
- **Simplified Chinese characters** are used to facilitate learning of the written language used by the majority of Chinese speakers.
- **Pinyin matched to the word level** instead of individual characters helps students understand how to write and space pinyin meaningfully. *Discover China* follows the official pinyin orthography of mainland China. All pinyin shows the character's original tone, except in those parts of the pronunciation and speaking section where special rules about tonal change are introduced.
- **Extra pair work activities** for each unit provide additional communicative speaking practice.
- **Supported by free online resources** including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes, extra character writing sheets and more.

Workbook

The Workbook provides extensive consolidation of the language skills and knowledge taught in the Student's Book.

Each Workbook unit features clear language objectives which correspond with the Student's Book unit structure and activities. A wide variety of vocabulary and grammar exercises, as well as extra reading and listening activities, provide practice of the core language presented in the Student's Book. Writing practice sections give students the option to extend their Chinese character writing skills beyond the Student's Book requisites. A self-assessment at the end of each unit using “I can...” descriptors enables students to reflect on their individual progress.

Characteristics of each level

Books 1 and 2 cover basic language relating to everyday topics. The focus is on listening and speaking, although there is a writing activity at end of each lesson. Character writing practice is available in both the Student's Book and Workbook to help students learn how to write Chinese characters with the correct stroke order.

Book 1 is for beginners who have not studied any Chinese. To avoid overwhelming students with character reading at the very beginning, pinyin is placed above all Chinese words and characters to provide the necessary language support. However, to help students develop character recognition skills, pinyin does not appear for conversations and passages in the Workbook. Activities in the online unit quizzes, which simulate test questions from the HSK test, have no pinyin.

Book 2 follows on naturally from Book 1. Pinyin is used only in activities with new words and phrases, and the activities in the pronunciation and speaking section of each unit. Most other activities in the book do not carry pinyin. However, versions of all the main conversations and reading passages with pinyin are available for download from *Discover China's* free resources website.

Books 3 and 4 cover language from school life and the work environment. The focus is on the development of language skills, which is conducted through various approaches including guided writing. The lessons contain activities to further enhance students' language skills in all areas across different contexts and functions. A new guided writing section teaches students how to compose natural texts following authentic-like texts. The conversations and reading passages are longer, and pinyin only appears in each unit's vocabulary boxes.

Storylines

- **Book 1** presents the fundamentals of the Chinese language, following the characters' day-to-day lives in Beijing. From simple introductions to going shopping, eating out or playing sports, students encounter a broad range of situations and learn the basic language skills they require.
- **Book 2** includes "survival Chinese" for travel and living in China, as the characters hit the road on their winter holidays. They see the Terracotta Warriors in Xi'an and try authentic Sichuan food in Chengdu, make new friends and broaden their knowledge of Chinese to handle typical subjects such as food and drink, hotels, sightseeing and going to the doctor.
- **Book 3** takes a deeper look at China's diverse culture. Steve lands his dream job and is sent on assignment as a photojournalist to exciting places all over China. Amanda pursues her love of Chinese history and undertakes a research project on a major historical figure. This provides students with rich exposure to the use of Chinese language across various cultural and social contexts.
- **Book 4** prepares students for using Chinese for work-related purposes. Mark takes up an internship at a Chinese organization in London, acting as a guide for a delegation from China. Wang Yu and Yeong-min volunteer at a summer camp in China, helping foreign students to understand Chinese language and culture. All three gain valuable experience in working with colleagues and customers, and dealing with different situations.



Unit structure

Student Book 1 | Unit 8 How much is it? 多少钱?

Post-listening
Comprehension questions are used to check understanding. Controlled activities allow students to practise the target words/expressions, and role-play the conversation.

LESSON | 1
Vocabulary and listening

1 Number the colours in the order you hear them.

2 Listen to the conversation. Anna and Wang Yu are buying some clothes at a market.

3 Listen again and check the true statements.

4 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use different colours, clothes items and prices.

Pre-listening
Pre-listening activities are designed to pre-teach the key words/expressions, or activate learners' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the conversation.

Presentation dialogue
Meaningful and authentic conversation between the resident characters sets the context for vocabulary and language presentation.

New words list
Target words are set out in the order they appear in the conversation.

Pronunciation
Difficult pronunciation points for English speakers are presented and practised in context to prepare students for communicative activities in the unit.

Chinese to go
Simple and useful colloquial expressions or language "chunks" of immediate use are provided to learners.

Pre-reading
Pre-reading activities are designed to pre-teach the key words, or activate students' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the reading passage.

Pronunciation and speaking

The tones of —

1 Look at the tone marks for —. How does the tone of — change?

2 Listen and check the correct tones for —.

3 Listen and match the tones for —.

4 Listen and say the words.

5 Listen and say the words.

Work in pairs.
Student A: You are a customer in a clothes shop. You like a clothes item but it is too expensive. Student B: You are a shop assistant. You agree to sell the item at a lower price.

CHINESE TO GO
Talking about shopping

LESSON | 2
Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.

2 Read Steve's blog and answer the questions.

生词 New words

Reading
Reading texts cover a wide range of text types relevant to students' everyday lives, such as diaries, text messages, blogs and online profiles.

Pre-reading
Pre-reading activities are designed to pre-teach the key words, or activate students' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the reading passage.

Post-reading
Controlled, guided and freer activities allow learners to practise the target language in a sequence that is most effective for learning.

Reading
Reading texts cover a wide range of text types relevant to students' everyday lives, such as diaries, text messages, blogs and online profiles.

Post-reading
Controlled, guided and freer activities allow learners to practise the target language in a sequence that is most effective for learning.

Grammar reference

Grammar reference at the back of the book provides detailed explanation of the grammar rules as a handy resource for both teachers and students.

Language in use

Grammar points are presented and practised through an inductive or "discovery" approach, drawing on students' existing knowledge.

Short, simple examples help students analyse and discover the grammar rules.

Unit 8

Measure words
The measure word 个 is used extensively for people or objects, both real and abstract.

People: 一个朋友 a friend
Real objects: 一个苹果 an apple
Abstract objects: 一个结果 a result

The measure word 件 is used for clothing, objects in general or abstract things.

Clothing: 一件毛衣 a sweater
Objects in general: 一件礼物 a gift
Abstract things: 一件工作 a piece of work

The measure word 条 is used for long and narrow objects, including animals or body parts.

Long and narrow objects: 一条裤子 a pair of trousers
Animals: 一条鱼 a fish
Body parts: 一条腿 a leg

The measure word 双 is used for things that come in pairs, including body parts.

Body parts: 一双手 a pair of hands
Objects: 一双袜子 a pair of socks

Numerals 二 / 两
二 is used:
• when counting, e.g. 二个人
• for expressing ordinal arrangement, e.g. 第二个人
• as the last digit of a numerical expression, e.g. 九十二
两 is used for expressing quantity, e.g. 两本书

Unit 9

Expressing past tense
The past tense particle 了 structure is not English because an action, and action happens

Expressing measure
The verb 有 has means 'have', i.e. there is/are

Subject
The subject of a sentence is the person or thing that does the action

Subject
The subject of a sentence is the person or thing that does the action

Language in use

Complete the sentences.

1. 史丹夫 _____ 北京的书店。
2. _____ 很远。
3. 他给哥哥买了 _____ 和 _____ 的T恤。
4. 每个周末 _____ 都有很多人。
5. 他每个星期天早上他都在 _____ 买东西。

Language in use

Measure words

个	件	条	双
人	毛衣	裙子	袜子
朋友	T恤	路	眼睛
苹果	衬衫	毛巾	手
星期	事情		

Look at the examples for using measure words.

Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

个 双 条 件

1. 一 _____ 朋友 3. 三 _____ 大衣
2. 一 _____ 裤子 4. 一 _____ 鞋

Turn to page 168 for more information.

Expressing past tense using 了

Look at the sentences.

Adverbial	Subject	Adverbial	Verb/Particle	Object	Predicate
上个星期五	我		买	了	四件衣服。
	他		去	了	北京。
	我	在美国	住	了	三年。

Now check the two correct explanations.

1. 了 is used after a verb.
2. 了 is used to indicate the completion of an action.
3. 了 is always used before a number.

Write the sentences in Chinese.

1. He has studied Chinese for three years.
2. She bought a pair of black shoes.
3. They went to Shanghai.

Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.

Communication activity

Meaningful and realistic communication in relevant contexts is facilitated through role-plays and speaking tasks.

Character writing

Common radicals in characters from the unit are introduced and practised to build students' vocabulary.

Review and practice

Builds on language acquisition by recycling previously learnt target language, through which students can also assess their progress.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

Work in groups. You are going to set up a website for a designer clothing store, targeting Chinese customers. Think about the following:

- the selection of clothes that you will sell online
- the prices of similar clothes in your local shops
- the prices in RMB
- name, telephone number, email and website of your online store
- date you plan to launch the online store

Make notes and rough designs for the pages of your online store.

Present the pages of your store to another group.

Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

To bargain or not to bargain?

For westerners who are used to fixed prices, bargaining in China can be one of the hardest things to get used to. However, it is a good idea to bargain in China, as tourists are often offered an inflated price in markets, small shops, restaurants and sometimes even hotels.

Here are some bargaining tips if you are in China:

- Learn a few common Chinese phrases, such as "It's too expensive" and "can you make it cheaper?"
- Take your time. Never buy anything at the first place you go to. Always shop around to compare prices.
- Decide how much you are willing to spend on an item before making an offer.
- If your offer is not accepted, try walking away. You will usually be called back for another round of negotiation if the shop is willing to sell.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
衤	clothes	衫
貝	shell	贝

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

衫 贵 衬 货

Match the words with the meanings.

1. 裤子 a skirt
2. 裙子 b shopping
3. 购物 c shop assistant
4. 售货员 d trousers

Trace the characters in the boxes.

裤

Review and practice

Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences.

1. 我买了一件黑毛衣。
2. 安娜去了北京。
3. 明天是王玉的生日。
4. 农民喜欢白色。

Complete the passage with 二 and 两.

二月 _____ 日, 我和 _____ 个朋友买了 _____ 件衣服, _____ 双鞋和 _____ 张生日卡。

Circle the odd word.

1. 红色 蓝色 黑色 书店
2. 毛衣 T恤 鞋 裤子
3. 商店 商店 商店 商店

Unit 8

Decide the colour and price for the following clothes.

Answer Student B's questions about your clothes.

Ask Student B about these clothes items:

Cultural Corner

Cultural points linked to the unit topic enable a greater understanding and appreciation of Chinese life and culture.



Vocabulary extension

Match the pictures with the words.

1. 围巾
2. 短褲
3. 牛仔褲

4. 衬衫
5. 帽子
6. 连衣裙

Vocabulary extension

More topic-related words are introduced for flexible learning.

Vocabulary list

售货员	shūhuàiyuán	n.	shop assistant	裤子	kǔzi	n.	trousers
买	mǎi	v.	buy	白色	bái sè	n.	white
衣服	yīfu	n.	clothes	有名	yǒu míng	n.	famous
条	tiáo	m.	measure word	这边	zhè biān	n.	over here
裙子	qūnǚ	n.	skirt	红色	hóng sè	n.	red
来	lái	v.	come	蓝色	lán sè	n.	blue
这边	zhè biān	pron.	this way	黑色	hēi sè	n.	black
红	hóng	adj.	red	好看	hǎo kàn	adj.	good-looking
蓝色	lán sè	n.	blue	试	shì	v.	try
黑色	hēi sè	n.	black	大衣	dà yī	n.	coat

Vocabulary list

All target words are presented in black and non-target words in colour for easy reference.

Additional speaking practice

Activities are function-oriented, requiring students to use relevant vocabulary and language points in realistic and contextualized ways.

Unit 8

Decide the colour and price for the following clothes.

Answer Student B's questions about your clothes.

Ask Student B about these clothes items:

Contents

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Getting started Experiencing Chinese page 10	A brief introduction to the Chinese language	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying the four tones Identifying sentences in Chinese Introduction to Chinese characters 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction to radicals and using the dictionary The basic strokes The seven rules of stroke order
Unit 1 你好! Hello! page 17	Greetings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying people's names and greetings Identifying surnames and given names Learning about Chinese names and meanings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exchanging greetings Introducing yourself Asking people's names Writing Chinese names
Unit 2 你是哪里人? Where are you from? page 27	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Countries Nationalities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying someone's nationality People and their nationalities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking for and giving information about nationalities Describing people, where they live and where they are from
Unit 3 你做什么工作? What do you do? page 37	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Occupations Family members 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying someone's occupation Identifying information about family members A letter about one's family 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking and answering questions about occupations Asking and answering questions about family members Describing one's family members and their occupations
Unit 4 他真高! He's so tall! page 47	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> People's appearances Favourites 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Understanding information about people's appearance Online profile describing favourite people and animal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Describing people's appearances Writing a personal profile
Review 1 page 57			
Unit 5 这是我的电话号码。 Here's my phone number. page 61	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Addresses Contact numbers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying contact numbers Identifying postal and email addresses Text messages 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking for and giving information about contact numbers and addresses Writing addresses, telephone numbers and email addresses Responding to a text message
Unit 6 今天几号? What's the date today? page 71	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Birthdays Invitations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying days of the week Identifying months and dates Daily activities on a weekly planner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking for and saying dates and days Making invitations Creating personal calendars

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Words used for classroom expressions Numbers 1 to 10 	Introduction to pinyin and the four tones		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Word order of Chinese sentences (I) Verbs 叫, 姓, 是 Questions ending with 呢 Greeting words Words used to introduce people 	The four tones	Is your surname Ding or Yuan?	Radicals 亻 and 女
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yes/no questions ending with 吗 Questions with interrogative pronoun 哪里 / 哪 Negative adverb 不 Country names, nationalities 	The four tones	Is he speaking Chinese?	Radicals 口 and 日
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adverbs 也 / 都 Word order of Chinese sentences (II) Pronouns as modifiers (+的) Occupations, family members 	The finals: a, e, i	Times change, job preferences change!	Radicals 宀 and 阝 (right)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Interrogative pronoun 谁 Numbers in Chinese Asking about age using 多大 真 / 很 + adjective Adjectives to describe people's appearance 	The finals: ao, uei, en	I was born in the Year of the Horse.	Radicals 土 and 辶
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Question word 多少 Word order of Chinese addresses Telephone and room numbers Text message terms Words for addresses and contact numbers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The tones of 不 The number "1" 	The Chinese way of thinking: from large to small	Radicals 讠 and 讠
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Months and dates Sentences without verbs Making invitations using 请 Dates, days of the week and months, daily activities 	The initials: j, q, x	Lucky numbers in China	Radicals 月 and 扌

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Unit 7 八点见! See you at eight! page 81	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Time • Appointments 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identifying time expressions • Schedules and daily activities • Activities on a weekend planner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Asking for and telling the time • Making appointments • Creating a weekend planner
Unit 8 多少钱? How much is it? page 91	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clothes • Shopping 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identifying clothes, colours and prices • A blog about life in Beijing 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Talking about clothes • Asking for items, prices and bargaining when shopping • Writing a blog
Review 2 page 101			
Unit 9 不远! It's not far! page 105	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Locations • Advertisements 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identifying locations and directions of places • Advertisements for student housing 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Describing locations • Asking for and giving directions • Writing an advertisement for a house or flat
Unit 10 坐火车吧。 Let's take the train. page 115	Transportation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identifying different types of transport • Travel plans 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Talking about types of transport • Discussing which types of transport to take • Completing an email invitation
Unit 11 我会跳舞。 I can dance. page 125	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sports • Likes and dislikes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identifying different types of sport • A lifestyle questionnaire 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Asking and answering questions about sports • Talking about likes and dislikes • Answering a questionnaire • Describing one's recreational activities
Unit 12 我们去看京剧。 We're going to the Beijing opera. page 135	Holiday plans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identifying preferences for holiday plans • Online chat messages 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Asking and answering questions about holiday plans • Responding to an online chat message
Review 3 page 145			

Language support page 149
 Pair work activities pages 150 and 156

Grammar reference page 162
 Picture captions page 171

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adverbial expressions of time • Different ways of telling the time • Expressing future tense with 要 • Words for time, daily activities 	Difference between "u" and "ü"	Too late or too early?	Radicals 门 and 日
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Measure words • Numerals 二 and 两 • Expressing past tense using 了 • Clothes items, colours, places in a city 	The tones of 一	To bargain or not to bargain?	Radicals 讠 and 贝
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Expressing existence using 有 • Asking questions using 有没有 • Expressing locations with the verb 在 • Directions, places and types of student housing 	Retroflex "r"	How far is really far?	Radicals 木 and 彳
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alternative questions with 还是 • Questions ending with 好吗 • Expressing superlatives with 最 • Using the particle 吧 • Modes of transport and holiday activities 	Difference between "q" and "ch"	China—a kingdom of bicycles	Radicals 又 and 亻
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Using modal verbs 可以 and 会 • Pivotal sentences • Talking about past actions with 过 • Types of sports, abilities 	Difference between "zh" and "ch"	Dance: a popular pastime	Radicals 王 and 辶
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Expressing alternatives using 或者 and 还是 • Expressing regular events with 每……都…… • Cities in China, holiday activities 	Sentence intonation	Chinese kung fu	Radicals 艹 and 禾

Pinyin guide page 172
 English translations page 173

Vocabulary list page 178

GETTING STARTED

Experiencing Chinese

LESSON 1

Pronunciation and listening

Putonghua and pinyin

Putonghua is the Chinese expression for Mandarin Chinese. It means “common language”. Pinyin is a phonetic spelling system for Chinese characters, which uses the Roman alphabet. Pinyin is not just useful for foreign learners of Chinese, it is also used to teach the standard pronunciation of Putonghua to Chinese people who speak other dialects.

1 Listen to the following words in Chinese. Check the four words containing sounds which don't exist in English.

- qing xie nü
 ren ta

Chinese pronunciation

Most Chinese syllables consist of an “initial” consonant followed by a “final”. Finals consist of vowels, which may be followed by *-n* or *-ng*. Finals may occur without initials. Note that not all the initials and finals can be combined.

Chinese initials:

b/p/m/f/d/t/n/l/g/k/h/j/q/x/zh/ch/sh/
r/z/c/s

Chinese finals:

a/o/e/i/u/ü/ai/ei/ao/ou/ia/ie/ua/uo/
üe/iao/iou/uai/uei/an/en/in/ian/uan/uen/
ün/üan/ang/eng/ing/iang/uang/ueng/ong/
iong/er/ê/-i/-i

Chinese pronunciation is not especially difficult for English speakers because most of the sounds are quite similar to those in English. There are only a few sounds that are tricky for English speakers, for example, q, x, r and ü.

▶ Turn to page 172 for more information about pinyin.



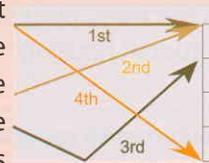
2 Listen and circle the characters with the same tones.

- 1 请 写 听
2 一 十 七

Tones

Chinese is a tonal language. There is a tone for every syllable. We can use different tones with the same syllable to express different meanings.

Mandarin has four tones. It is important to pronounce the tones correctly because change of tones will change the meaning. The four tones are depicted graphically with this chart, to show where each tone occurs in tonal space. There is also a neutral tone in spoken Mandarin. It is light, flat and should not be emphasized. The neutral tone is used at the end of a phrase or with sentence particles.



The following table illustrates tone markings above the sound *ma* and describes how each tone is pronounced:

Tone	Mark	Description
first	mā	high and level
second	má	starts medium in tone, then rises to the top
third	mǎ	starts low, dips to the bottom, then rises towards the top
fourth	mà	starts at the top, then falls sharply and strongly to the bottom
neutral	ma	flat, with no emphasis



3 Listen and check the tones you hear.

- 1 zhōng zhòng 3 nǐ ní
2 wén wèn 4 hǎo háo

Vocabulary and speaking



4 Listen and say the words. Make sure you use the correct tones.

xué		kàn	
学	study	看	look, see
dú		wèn	
读	read	问	ask
xiě		shuō	
写	write	说	say, speak
tīng		qǐng	
听	listen	请	please

▶ Turn to page 14 for more classroom expressions.



5 Match the Chinese phrases with their English translations.

- | | |
|------------|----------------------|
| Nǐ hǎo ma | |
| 1 你好吗? | a I'm sorry. |
| Lǎoshī hǎo | |
| 2 老师好! | b You're welcome. |
| Zàijiàn | |
| 3 再见! | c Hello, teacher! |
| Xièxie | |
| 4 谢谢! | d It doesn't matter. |
| Bù kèqi | |
| 5 不客气。 | e Goodbye! |
| Duibuqǐ | |
| 6 对不起。 | f How are you? |
| Méiguānxi | |
| 7 没关系! | g Thank you! |

Now listen and say the phrases.



6 Listen and say the numbers.

yī	èr	sān	sì	wǔ
一	二	三	四	五
one	two	three	four	five
liù	qī	bā	jiǔ	shí
六	七	八	九	十
six	seven	eight	nine	ten

Now check the numbers as you hear them.

7 Match the numbers.

- | | | |
|-----|--|-----|
| yī | | |
| 1 一 | | a 1 |
| liù | | |
| 2 六 | | b 3 |
| bā | | |
| 3 八 | | c 9 |
| qī | | |
| 4 七 | | d 6 |
| sān | | |
| 5 三 | | e 7 |
| jiǔ | | |
| 6 九 | | f 8 |

8 Work in pairs.

Student A: Write down three numbers between 1 and 10. Do not show Student B your numbers.

Student B: Say three numbers between 1 and 10.

Student A: Listen for the numbers you have written. Clap when you hear your numbers.

Now change roles.

▶ Turn to page 149 for more numbers.

LESSON 2

Reading

1 Look at the sentences in different oriental languages. Check the sentence in Chinese.

- 1 彼は田中一男、日本人です。
- 2 그는 김대성이라고 합니다. 한국 사람입니다.
- 3 他叫王明，是中国人。
- 4 Ông đã gọi là Huang-fu, là người Việt Nam.

Chinese characters

A Chinese character (*Hanzi*) is a logogram used in writing Chinese. The *Kangxi Dictionary*, the most authoritative Chinese dictionary since the 18th century, contains approximately 47,035 Chinese characters, although a large number of these are rarely-used variants accumulated throughout history. Studies carried out in China have shown that literacy in the Chinese language requires a knowledge of only between 800 and 3500 characters.

In the Chinese writing system, characters are morphosyllabic, meaning that each character usually corresponds with a spoken syllable with a basic meaning. Chinese characters have also been used in other languages, most significantly Japanese, Korean and Vietnamese.

People often think Chinese characters represent pictures of the meaning, and from this we can deduce the meanings of the characters without being able to read them. However, only about 600 Chinese characters are derived from pictures, and even these characters have been standardized, simplified, and stylized to make them easier to write. As a result, we cannot easily see how the modern characters are derived from the original pictures. The graphics in the table illustrate some examples.

sun (日)		
moon (月)		
cloud (云)		
rain (雨)		

2 Guess the meanings of the characters. Use the pictograms to help you.

- 1 木 (tree) 林 =
- 2 日 (sun) 明 =
- 3 人 (person) 众 =
- 4 火 (fire) 焚 =

3 Look at the characters. The parts in red are the radicals of the characters.

妈 mā 您 nín
 厅 tīng 园 yuán

Radicals and using the dictionary

Chinese characters have radicals. To look up words in a Chinese–English dictionary, we need to:

- identify the radical
- find the radical in the radical index
- find the whole character in the character index
- look up the character in the main dictionary

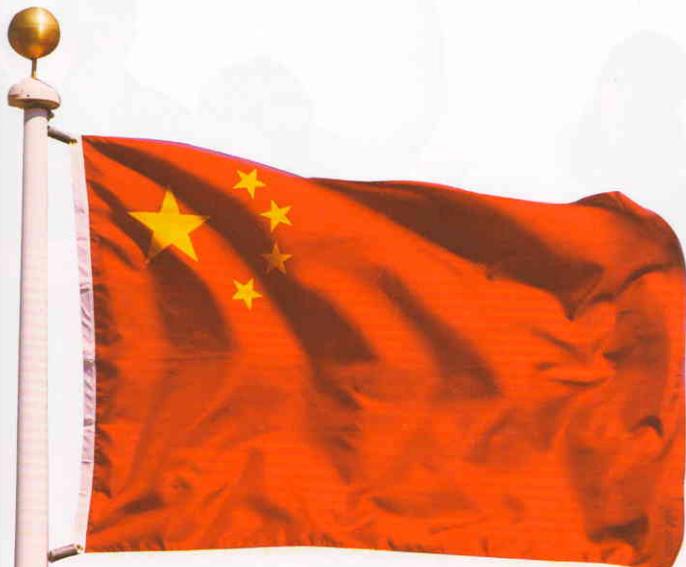
4 Work in pairs and use your dictionary.

- 1 Find the radical of the characters in Activity 3 in the radical index.
- 2 Find the whole character in the character index.
- 3 Note the page number of the character and then look it up.

Now say what these characters mean.

5 Look up the characters in your dictionary. (The radicals are in red.)

你 写
问 请



Character writing

Chinese characters: the basic strokes

We write Chinese with some basic strokes, six of which are shown below.

Basic stroke	English	Example
丶	dot	小 六
一	horizontal	一 三
丨	vertical	十 中
丿	downward left	人 大
㇇	downward right	八 人
㇏	upward	打 江

These strokes combine to form more complex strokes.

Compare the simple strokes of 一 and 人, with the complex strokes of 露 (dew).

Remember that Chinese–English dictionaries are partly organized by the number of strokes each character has.

Chinese characters: the seven rules of stroke order

We always write character strokes in the same order, following seven rules:

- 1 horizontal before vertical 十 丰
- 2 downward left before downward right 人 八
- 3 from left to right 川 朋
- 4 from top to bottom 三 丁
- 5 from outside to inside 月 问
- 6 from outside to inside, then closing 回 国
- 7 middle before two sides 小 水

6 Trace the characters in the boxes.



Classroom expressions



Classroom expressions used by teachers

Shàngkè 上课	Class has begun.	Xiàkè 下课。	Class is over.
Qǐng jìn 请进。	Please come in.	Qǐng zuò 请坐。	Please sit down.
Gēn wǒ shuō 跟我说。	Repeat after me.	Qǐng tīng 请听。	Please listen.
Duì 对!	That's right!	Hěn hǎo 很好!	Well done!
Qǐng huídá wèntí 请回答问题。	Please answer the questions.	Qǐng dú kèwén 请读课文。	Please read the text.
Zài shuō yī biàn 再说一遍。	Say it again.	Yǒu wèntí ma 有问题吗?	Do you have any questions?
Dǎ kāi shū dào dì yè 打开书到第……页。	Open your books to page ...		
Qǐng kàn hēibǎn shū 请看黑板/书。	Please look at the board / your books.		
Liǎng rén sān rén yī zǔ zuò 两人/三人一组做……	Work in pairs / groups of three to ...		
Nǐmen míngbai ma 你们明白吗?	Do you understand?		





Classroom expressions used by students

Dì jǐ shēng
第几声?

Which tone?

Wǒ bù míngbai
我不明白。

I don't understand.

Wǒ yǒu yī gè wèntí
我有一个问题。

I have a question.

Qǐng zài shuō yī biàn
请再说一遍。

Can you please repeat that?

zěnme dú

…… 怎么读?

How do you pronounce ...?

de pīnyīn shì shénme

…… 的拼音是什么?

What is the pinyin for ...?

hànzì zěnme xiě

…… 汉字怎么写?

How do you write ...?

yòng Yīngyǔ Hànyǔ zěnme shuō

…… 用英语/汉语怎么说?

How do you say ... in English/Chinese?

Wǒ kěyǐ qù xǐshǒujiān ma
我可以去洗手间吗?

Can I go to the toilet?

Duìbuqǐ wǒ chídào le
对不起, 我迟到了。

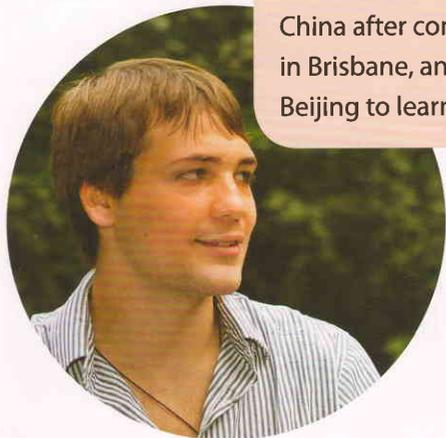
Sorry I'm late.

Xièxie lǎoshī
谢谢老师!

Thank you, teacher!



Meet the characters



Mǎkè

Mark Johnson (马克) comes from Australia. He went on holiday to China after completing high school in Brisbane, and decided to stay in Beijing to learn Chinese.



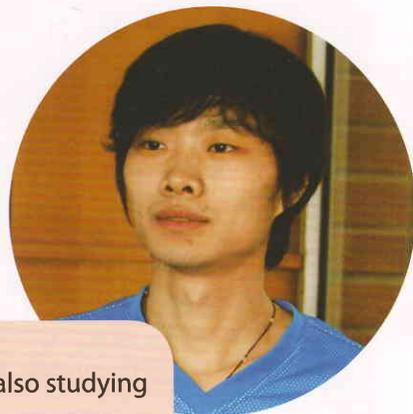
Wáng Yù

Wang Yu (王玉) was born in Beijing. She is at the same university as the others, studying music. She and Anna are language partners, as Wang Yu also wants to improve her English.



Ānnà

Anna Pollard (安娜) is Mark's classmate, from New York. She is spending a year in China before returning to the US to complete her studies in International Relations.



Jīn Yǒngmín

Kim Yeong-min (金永民) is also studying Chinese. He comes from Seoul. Like Wang Yu, Yeong-min is a musician, and plays guitar in a local band. He plans to study Chinese medicine after he finishes his courses in Chinese.

Shǐdīfū
Steve Brown (史蒂夫), another classmate of Mark and Anna's, comes from London. He is a few years older than the others, and has already graduated from university, where he studied economics. He works part-time for an international magazine.



UNIT

1

Nǐ hǎo
你好!

Hello!



LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|------|-------------|
| 1 你好 | a you |
| 2 请问 | b I, me |
| 3 你 | c may I ask |
| 4 我 | d hello |
| 5 他 | e she, her |
| 6 她 | f he, him |

Now listen and say the words.



2 Listen to the conversation.

Mark is meeting Wang Yu for the first time.

Mǎkè Nǐ hǎo
马克：你好！

Wáng Yù Nǐ hǎo
王玉：你好！

Mǎkè Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénmemíngzi
马克：请问，你叫什么名字？

Wáng Yù Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù Nǐ ne
王玉：我叫王玉。你呢？

生词 New words

nǐ hǎo	你好	hello
nǐ	你	you
hǎo	好	good, OK
qǐngwèn	请问	may I ask, excuse me
qǐng	请	please, invite
wèn	问	ask
jiào	叫	be called
shénme	什么	what
míngzi	名字	name
wǒ	我	I, me
ne	呢	particle used to ask questions
rènshi	认识	know, get to know
hěn	很	very
gāoxìng	高兴	glad, happy
xiǎojiě	小姐	Miss
duìbuqǐ	对不起	sorry
xìng	姓	surname, family name

Mǎkè Wǒ jiào Mǎkè
 马克: 我叫马克, Mark Johnson。

Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng
 认识你很高兴,

Yù xiǎojiě
 玉小姐。

Wáng Yù Duìbuqǐ wǒ xìng Wáng
 王玉: 对不起, 我姓王。



3 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How many names did you hear in the conversation?
- 2 What is the man's name in Chinese?
- 3 What is the woman's surname?

4 Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Use your own names.



5 Listen and number the conversations in the order you hear them.

Liú Lì
 刘丽, _____!



a



Wǒ jiào Mǎkè
 我叫马克。_____?

b



Qǐngwèn
 请问, _____?

c

Now listen again and complete the conversations.

Pronunciation and speaking

The four tones



1 Listen and say the words.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| nǐ hǎo
1 你好 | nǐ ne
你呢 |
| qǐngwèn
2 请问 | shénme
什么 |
| rènshi
3 认识 | gāoxìng
高兴 |



2 Listen and complete the conversation.

Nǐ hǎo
A: 你好!

B: _____!

A: _____?

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù Nǐ ne
B: 我叫王玉。你呢?

Wǒ jiào Mǎkè
A: 我叫马克。

B: _____。



3 Listen and say the words.

These words are often used for Chinese names.

Chinese names

Male

huá
华 splendid
yīng
英 outstanding
yú
瑜 fine jade
wēi
伟 great

Female

huā
花 flower
yíng
莹 crystal clear
yù
玉 jade
wēi
薇 rose

Now check the best names for the following people.

- | | | |
|----------|--|---|
| 1 a girl | <input type="checkbox"/> Sūn Wěi 孙伟 | <input type="checkbox"/> Sūn Wēi 孙薇 |
| 2 a boy | <input type="checkbox"/> Lǐ Zhōnghuá 李中华 | <input type="checkbox"/> Lǐ Jīnhuā 李金花 |
| 3 a girl | <input type="checkbox"/> Wáng Yùyíng 王玉莹 | <input type="checkbox"/> Wáng Guóyīng 王国英 |

4 Work with the whole class. Introduce yourself to each of your classmates.

- Nǐ hǎo Wǒ jiào
A: 你好! 我叫……。
- Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
请问, 你叫什么名字?
- Nǐ hǎo Wǒ jiào
B: 你好! 我叫……。

CHINESE TO GO



Greeting people

Zǎoshang hǎo
早上好! Good morning!

Wǎnshang hǎo
晚上好! Good evening!

Hǎo jiǔ bù jiàn
好久不见! Long time no see!



LESSON | 2

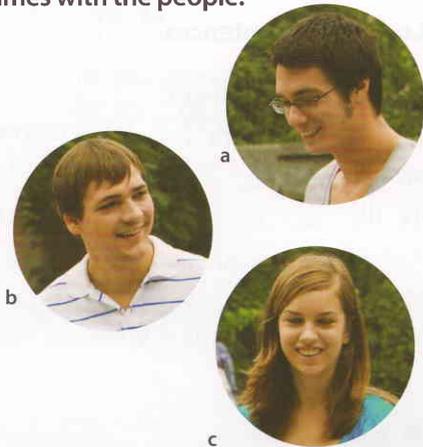
Reading and writing

1 Match the names with the people.

1 Ānnà
安娜

2 Shǐdīfū
史蒂夫

3 Mǎkè
马克



3 Complete the table with the correct information.

xìng 姓			
míngzì 名字			

2 Read the conversation and answer the questions.

1 Mark 的 Zhōngwén míngzì shì shénme
的 中文 名字 是 什么?

2 Anna 的 Zhōngwén míngzì shì shénme
的 中文 名字 是 什么?

3 Steve 的 Zhōngwén míngzì shì shénme
的 中文 名字 是 什么?

4 Work in groups and introduce yourself to the group. Use the conversation to help you.

生词 New words

Zhōngwén 中文	Chinese	nǐmen 你们	you (plural)
shì 是	be	dàjiā 大家	everybody

Wǒ jiào
我叫 Mark Johnson,
Zhōngwén míngzì shì Mǎkè
中文 名字 是 马克。
Rènshi nǐmen hěn gāoxìng
认识 你们 很 高兴。

Dàjiā hǎo Wǒ shì
大家好! 我是 Anna Pollard,
Zhōngwén míngzì shì Ānnà
中文 名字 是 安娜。
Hěn gāoxìng rènshi dàjiā
很 高兴 认识 大家。

Nǐmen hǎo Wǒ jiào
你们好! 我叫 Steve Brown,
Zhōngwén míngzì shì Shǐdīfū
中文 名字 是 史蒂夫。

Language in use

Word order of Chinese sentences (I)

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
	Verb	Object
Wǒ 我	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王玉。
I am Wang Yu.		
Wǒ 我	xìng 姓	Wáng 王。
My family name is Wang.		
Tā 他	jiào 叫	Mǎkè 马克。
His name is Mark.		

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 A simple Chinese sentence is made up of the subject and the predicate.
- 2 The predicate consists of a subject and an object.
- 3 The word order of subject-verb-object is similar to English.

2 Write a simple sentence to introduce yourself. Use the example sentences above to help you.

▶ Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

Verbs 叫 姓 是

1 Look at the sentences.

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
你叫什么名字? What is your name?

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù
我叫王玉。 My name is Wang Yu.

de Zhōngwén míngzi shì Mǎkè
Mark的中文名字是马克。
Mark's Chinese name is Mǎkè.

Nǐ xìng shénme
你姓什么? What is your family name?

Wǒ xìng
我姓Brown。 My family name is Brown.

xìng
Mark姓Johnson。 Mark's family name is Johnson.

Tā shì Mǎkè
他是马克。 He is Mark.

Tā shì Shǐdìfū
他是史蒂夫。 He is Steve.

Tā shì Ānnà
她是安娜。 She is Anna.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 When the verbs 叫, 姓 and 是 are used after different subjects, their forms change.
- 2 The position of the question marker 什么 in a question is in the same place as its answer in a statement.
- 3 姓 is used to introduce one's surname, 叫 is used to introduce one's first name or full name, and 是 is used to identify someone or something.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct parts of people's names.

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù wǒ xìng
1 我叫王玉，我姓_____。

Nǐ xìng nǐ jiào Zhāng Wěi
2 你姓____，你叫张伟。

Wǒ shì Dīng Yún wǒ xìng
3 我是丁云，我姓_____。

▶ Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

Questions ending with

ne 呢

1 Look at the conversations.

	Statement		Follow-up question with 呢
	Subject	Predicate	
A:	我	xìng Dīng 姓丁，	nǐ ne 你呢？
B:	我	xìng Wáng 姓王。	
A:	我	shì Shǐdīfū 是史蒂夫，	nǐ ne 你呢？
B:	我	shì Mǎkè 是马克。	

Now answer the questions.

1 你呢 in Conversation 1 means _____.

Nǐ xìng shénme
a 你姓什么？

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
b 你叫什么名字？

2 What does A in Conversation 2 want to know by asking 你呢？



2 Work in groups of three. Ask and answer questions with 呢. Use the prompts below to help you.

Wǒ xìng nǐ ne
A: 我姓 Smith，你呢？

Wǒ xìng
B: 我姓 Craven。

Wǒ jiào nǐ ne
我叫 Angela，(ask Student C) 你呢？

Wǒ jiào Wǒ xìng
C: 我叫 Miles。我姓 Brown，(ask Student A)
nǐ ne
你呢？

▶ Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

Work with the whole class. Say your Chinese name and ask other students their names. Use the prompt below to help you.

Wǒ de Zhōngwén míngzì shì Mǎkè nǐ ne
我的 中文 名字 是 马克, 你呢?

Now make a list of everyone's names.

▶ Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Is your surname Ding or Yuan?

Chinese names are normally formed with two or three characters. The surname always precedes the given name. In the example "Ding Yuan", the surname is Ding, and the given name is Yuan. Surnames are generally one syllable, and given names usually contain one or two syllables. In Chinese, a person is seldom referred to by his or her surname alone.

The use of given names suggests a much closer relationship between the speaker and the person being addressed than in English. If one's given name contains only one syllable, like "Yuan", its use is even more limited. Even Ding Yuan's parents would most likely call him "Ding Yuan" at home rather than just "Yuan".

Character writing

Radicals help to illustrate the meaning of Chinese characters. Look at the following character in ancient Chinese and guess its meaning.



Is your guess correct? Putting a woman (女) and a child (子) together means good (好).

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
亻	man, person	你、他
女	woman	娜、姓

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

伟 姐 什 她

2 Match the characters with the meanings.

- | | |
|-----|-----------|
| 1 你 | a good |
| 2 他 | b surname |
| 3 好 | c you |
| 4 姓 | d he, him |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

你 你 你 你 你 你 你

他 他 他 他 他

好 好 好 好 好 好

姓 姓 姓 姓 姓 姓 姓 姓

UNIT

Review and practice

1 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|---------|------|---------------|
| dàjiā | 1 大家 | a name |
| shénme | 2 什么 | b know |
| míngzi | 3 名字 | c what |
| rènshi | 4 认识 | d happy, glad |
| gāoxìng | 5 高兴 | e everybody |
| qǐngwèn | 6 请问 | f hello |
| nǐ hǎo | 7 你好 | g may I ask |

2 Complete the word puzzle.

		Wǒ 我	
	Nǐ 你		shénme míngzi 什么名字?
Zhāng 张	Yún 云	xìng 姓	
	Mǎ 马		shì 是 Mark。

3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

gāoxìng qǐngwèn jiào
高兴 请问 叫

Shǐdīfū nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
史蒂夫: _____, 你叫什么名字?

Wáng Yù Wǒ Wáng Yù Nǐ ne
王玉: 我 _____ 王玉。你呢?

Shǐdīfū Wǒ jiào Shǐdīfū
史蒂夫: 我叫史蒂夫。

Wáng Yù Rènshi nǐ hěn _____
王玉: 认识你很高兴。

4 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- shénme jiào nǐ míngzi
1 什么 / 叫 / 你 / 名字 / ?
- shénme Wáng Yù xìng
2 什么 / 王玉 / 姓 / ?
- shénme shì Zhōngwén míngzi de
3 什么 / 是 / Mark / 中文 / 名字 / 的 / ?

Now answer the questions.

5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

xìng shénme rènshi ne
姓 什么 认识 呢

- Nǐ jiào _____ míngzi
1 你叫 _____ 名字?
- _____ nǐ hěn gāoxìng
2 _____ 你很高兴。
- Wǒ shì Wáng Yù nǐ
3 我是王玉, 你 _____ ?
- Wǒ jiào
4 我 _____ King, 叫 Sandra King。

6 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

- Nǐ xìng shénme
1 你姓什么?
a 我叫马克。 b 我姓王。
- Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
2 你叫什么名字?
a 我叫史蒂夫。 b 我姓张。

Vocabulary extension

Read the passage.

Addressing people

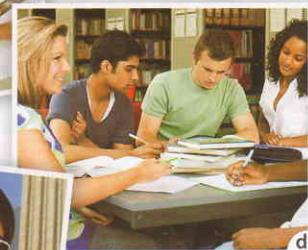
We use the following titles when addressing people in Chinese:

xīānsheng 先生	Mr.	xiǎojiě 小姐	Miss
nǚshì 女士	Ms.	tàitai 太太	Mrs.

On campus, the most popular way to address a stranger is to call him/her ^{tóngxué} 同学 (schoolmate) or ^{lǎoshī} 老师 (teacher). Sometimes these titles can be used with names, for example, ^{Lǐ xiānsheng} 李先生 and ^{Wáng xiǎojiě} 王小姐.

Character writing

Now look at these people and decide how you would address them.



Vocabulary list

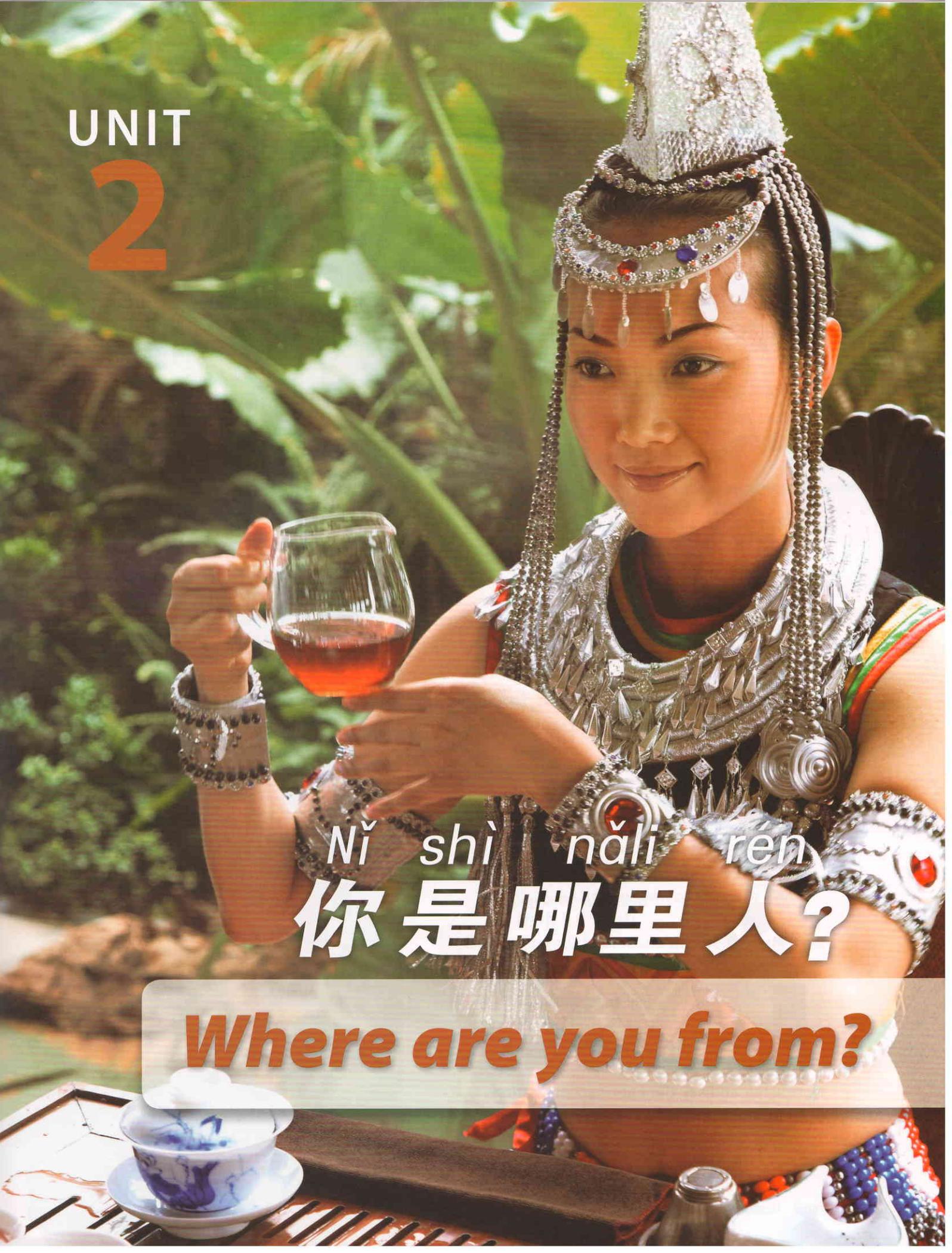
你好	nǐ hǎo		hello	小姐	xiǎojiě	n.	Miss
你	nǐ	pron.	you	对不起	duìbuqǐ		sorry
好	hǎo	adj.	good, OK	姓	xìng	v./n.	surname, family name
请问	qǐngwèn		may I ask, excuse me	中文	Zhōngwén	n.	Chinese
请	qǐng	interj./v.	please, invite	是	shì	v.	be
问	wèn	v.	ask	你们	nǐmen	pron.	you (plural)
叫	jiào	v.	be called	大家	dàjiā	pron.	everybody
什么	shénme	pron.	what	他	tā	pron.	he, him
名字	míngzi	n.	name	她	tā	pron.	she, her
我	wǒ	pron.	I, me	先生	xīānsheng	n.	Mr
呢	ne	particle	(used to ask questions)	女士	nǚshì	n.	Ms
认识	rènshi	v.	know, get to know	太太	tàitai	n.	Mrs
很	hěn	adv.	very	同学	tóngxué	n.	schoolmate
高兴	gāoxìng	adj.	glad, happy	老师	lǎoshī	n.	teacher

* The words in colour are not target words for the unit.

UNIT
2

Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén
你是哪里人?

Where are you from?



LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the flags with the nations and the people.



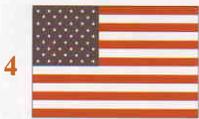
a Hánguó Hánguórén
韩国 / 韩国人



b Měiguó Měiguórén
美国 / 美国人



c Jiānádà Jiānádàrén
加拿大 / 加拿大人



d Yīngguó Yīngguórén
英国 / 英国人



e Àodàliyà Àodàliyàrén
澳大利亚 / 澳大利亚人



f Fǎguó Fǎguórén
法国 / 法国人



g Zhōngguó Zhōngguórén
中国 / 中国人



h Rìběn Rìběnrén
日本 / 日本人

Now listen and say the names of the nations and the people.



2 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are talking about their nationalities.

Shǐdīfū Zǎoshang hǎo
史蒂夫：早上好！

Wáng Yù Zǎoshang hǎo
王玉：早上好！

Shǐdīfū Nǐ shì Rìběnrén ma
史蒂夫：你是日本人吗？

Wáng Yù Bù shì wǒ bù shì
王玉：不是，我不是

Rìběnrén
日本人。

Shǐdīfū Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén
史蒂夫：你是哪里人？



Wáng Yù Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén
王 玉： 我 是 中 国 人。
Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
你 是 哪 国 人？

Shǐdīfū Wǒ shì Yīngguó rén
史 蒂 夫： 我 是 英 国 人。

Wáng Yù Nǐ zhù zài Lúndūn ma
王 玉： 你 住 在 伦 敦 吗？

Shǐdīfū Bù wǒ zhù zài Běijīng
史 蒂 夫： 不， 我 住 在 北 京。

生词 New words

zǎoshang 早上	hǎo 好	good morning	Zhōngguó 中国	China
Rìběn 日本		Japan	guó 国	country
rén 人		people	Yīngguó 英国	UK
ma 吗		particle used to ask questions	zhù 住	live
bù 不		not, no	zài 在	at, in
nǎli 哪里		where	Lúndūn 伦敦	London
nǎ 哪		which	Běijīng 北京	Beijing

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

Wáng Yù shì Rìběnrén ma

1 王 玉 是 日 本 人 吗？

Shǐdīfū shì nǎli rén

2 史 蒂 夫 是 哪 里 人？

Shǐdīfū zhù zài nǎli

3 史 蒂 夫 住 在 哪 里？

4 Complete the sentences.

Wáng Yù shì _____ rén tā bùshì _____

1 王 玉 是 _____ 人， 她 不 是 _____。

Shǐdīfū shì _____ rén tā zhù zài _____

2 史 蒂 夫 是 _____ 人， 他 住 在 _____。

5 Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Use your own countries or cities.

6 Listen and check where the speakers are from.

1 a 英国 b 韩国

2 a 中国 b 日本

3 a 法国 b 澳大利亚

4 a 加拿大 b 美国





Pronunciation and speaking

The four tones

1 Listen and say the words.

- | | | | |
|------|----------|----|----------|
| 1 住在 | zhù zài | 早上 | zǎoshang |
| 2 中国 | Zhōngguó | 北京 | Běijīng |
| 3 哪国 | nǎ guó | 哪里 | nǎlǐ |

2 Listen and check the words you hear.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----|------------------------------|-----|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a 人 | rén | <input type="checkbox"/> b 认 | rèn |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a 十 | shí | <input type="checkbox"/> b 是 | shì |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a 好 | hǎo | <input type="checkbox"/> b 号 | hào |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a 我 | wǒ | <input type="checkbox"/> b 握 | wò |

3 Complete the sentences using the words in the box and your own information.

Lúndūn Měiguó
伦敦 美国

- 1 史蒂夫住在北京，他不住在_____。
- 2 安娜不是英国人，她是_____人。
- 3 我是_____人，我住在_____。

Now work in pairs. Read your sentences and compare answers.

4 Work in pairs. Introduce each other using the prompts below.

Nǐ hǎo Wǒ jiào nǐ jiào shénme
A: 你好！我叫……，你叫什么名字？

Wǒ jiào rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng
B: 我叫……，认识你很高兴！

Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
你是哪国人？

Wǒ shì zhù zài Nǐ ne
A: 我是……，住在……。你呢？

Wǒ shì zhù zài
B: 我是……，住在……。

CHINESE TO GO

Talking about where people come from



Tā shì Běijīng rén ma
她是北京人吗？ Is she a Beijinger?

Wǒ bù zhīdào
我不知道。 I don't know.

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén
他是中国人。 He is Chinese.

Wǒ yě shì
我也是。 Me too.

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the names of the places.



- 1 Nánfēi 2 Xīní 3 Mò'ěrběn 4 Hǎoláiwū
1 南非 2 悉尼 3 墨尔本 4 好莱坞

2 Read the magazine and answer the questions.

- 1 Hayden Christensen 是哪国人?
shì nǎ guó rén
- 2 Charlize Theron 是美国人吗?
shì Měiguó rén ma
- 3 Russell Crowe 是哪国人?
shì nǎ guó rén
- 4 Nicole Kidman 是哪里人? Cate Blanchett 呢?
shì nǎlǐ rén ne

3 Work in pairs. Introduce someone you know who lives overseas.

Tā tā xìng _____ jiào _____
他/她姓 _____, 叫 _____。

Tā tā shì _____ rén zhù zài _____
他/她是 _____ 人, 住在 _____。

生词 New words

tāmen 他们	they, them	Nánfēi 南非	South Africa
Hǎoláiwū 好莱坞	Hollywood	Xīnxīlán 新西兰	New Zealand
míngxīng 明星	celebrity	Àodàliyà 澳大利亚	Australia
dànshì 但是	but	Xīní 悉尼	Sydney
Měiguó 美国	US	Mò'ěrběn 墨尔本	Melbourne
Jiānádà 加拿大	Canada		

Nǐ rènshi tāmen ma
你认识他们吗?

Tāmen shì Hǎoláiwū míngxīng
他们是好莱坞明星。

Dànshì tāmen bù shì Měiguó rén
但是他们不是美国人。

Hayden Christensen
shì Jiānádà rén
是加拿大人;

Charlize Theron
shì Nánfēi rén
是南非人;

Russell Crowe
shì Xīnxīlán rén
是新西兰人;

Nicole Kidman
shì Àodàliyà Xīnirén
是澳大利亚悉尼人;

Cate Blanchett
shì Àodàliyà
是澳大利亚
Mò'ěrběn rén
墨尔本人。



Language in use

Yes/no questions ending with

吗
ma

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		Question particle 吗
	Verb	Object	
Wǒ 我	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王 玉。	
Nǐ 你	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王 玉	ma 吗?
Tā 他	xìng 姓	Wáng 王。	
Tā 他	xìng 姓	Wáng 王	ma 吗?
Ānna 安娜	shì 是	Měiguó rén 美国人。	
Ānna 安娜	shì 是	Měiguó rén 美国人	ma 吗?

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 吗 is used at the end of a question.
- 2 吗 is used to form a yes/no question.
- 3 The word order in a question ending with 吗 is not the same as that in a statement.

2 Check the sentences that can have 吗 added at the end to make questions.

- Shǐdìfū zhù zài Běijīng
 1 史蒂夫住在北京。
- Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
 2 你是哪国人?
- Nǐ xìng shénme
 3 你姓什么?
- Tā jiào Wáng Yù
 4 她叫王玉。

▶ Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

Questions with interrogative pronoun

哪里 / 哪
nǎlǐ nǎ

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
	Verb	Complement / Object (noun / 哪里 / 哪国)
Wáng Yù 王 玉	zhù 住	zài Běijīng 在北京。
Wáng Yù 王 玉	zhù 住	zài nǎlǐ 在哪里?
Tā 她	shì 是	Yīngguó rén 英国人。
Tā 她	shì 是	nǎ guó rén 哪国人?

Now check the three correct explanations.

- 1 The word order of questions is the same as that of statements.
- 2 The word order of questions is different from the order of statements.
- 3 哪里 is used to ask questions about place.
- 4 哪国 means "which country".

2 Ask questions about the underlined parts of the sentences using 哪里 or 哪国.

Ānna shì Měiguó rén
 1 安娜是 美国人。

Shǐdìfū zhù zài Běijīng
 2 史蒂夫住 在北京。

Yǒngmín shì Hánguó rén
 3 永民是 韩国人。

Tā zhù zài Xīní
 4 他住在 悉尼。

▶ Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

Negative adverb

不
不

1 Look at the sentences.

Tā xìng Wáng Tā bù xìng Wáng
她姓王。 她不姓王。

Tā shì Yīngguó rén Tā bù shì Yīngguó rén
他是英国人。 他不是英国人。

Wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn Wǒ bù zhù zài Lúndūn
我住在伦敦。 我不住在伦敦。

- 1 Underline the sentences which are affirmative.
- 2 Circle the character which shows that the sentence is negative.
- 3 Circle the verbs which are modified by 不.

2 Look at the sentences.

Nǐ bù shì Měiguó rén ma Wǒ shì / Wǒ bù shì
你不是美国人吗? 我是/我不是。
Aren't you American? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 不 always comes before the subject.
- 2 不 usually comes before the predicate.

3 Rewrite the sentences as negative sentences with 不.

Nǐ shì Mǎkè
1 你是马克。

Wǒ shì Běijīng rén
2 我是北京人。

Tā jiào Wáng Yù
3 她叫王玉。

Wǒ rènshi Shǐdīfū
4 我认识史蒂夫。

▶ Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.



LESSON 3

Communication activity

1 Work with the rest of the class.

You are at a friend's party. Introduce yourself to the other people at the party, and ask them for their names and nationalities. Find out who is also from your country or area.

2 Work in groups.

Work with people who are from the same place as you. Discuss and list three interesting things about where you are from. Then tell the class about where you are from.

▶ Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Is he speaking Chinese?

In China, you might hear some Chinese people speak a language that is different from what you learnt in class. Most probably they are speaking another dialect of Chinese. There are many Chinese dialects, roughly classified into seven large groups: Mandarin (Putonghua), Gan, Hakka, Min, Wu, Xiang and Cantonese. Standard Mandarin was chosen to be the common language of China in the 1950s, to function as a lingua franca for the whole country. All Chinese dialects have some vocabulary in common, but people speaking different dialects cannot communicate or understand each other very well.

A distinguishing feature of the Chinese language is its tones. Mandarin has four tones and some dialects have even more. Despite the large differences among Chinese dialects, there is one thing they have in common—written Chinese characters.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
口	mouth	吗、呢
日	sun	早、是

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

名 哪 晶 明

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|----------|------|----------------------------------|
| jiào | 1 叫 | a particle used to ask questions |
| míngxīng | 2 明星 | b be called |
| zǎoshang | 3 早上 | c celebrity |
| ma | 4 吗 | d morning |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

叫

吗

早

明

Review and practice

1 Make five words with the characters.

zǎo dàn nǎ shàng shí
早 但 哪 上 识

shì xīng guó rèn míng
是 星 国 认 明

2 Complete the sentences with the correct words in brackets.

Nǐ shì _____ rén? (哪里 / 哪)
1 你是 _____ 人? (哪里 / 哪)

Tā shì Yīngguó rén, tā _____ Lúndūn.
2 他是 英国人, 他 _____ 伦敦。

zhù zài zhù
(住在 / 住)

Tāmen shì _____ míngxīng Zhōngguó.
3 他们是 _____。(明星 / 中国)

3 Match the questions with the answers.

Wáng Yù shì nǎlǐ rén?
1 王玉是哪里人?

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?
2 他是 中国人 吗?

Nǐ zhù zài Běijīng ma?
3 你住在北京 吗?

Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ?
4 她住在哪里?

Tā zhù zài Lúndūn.
a 她住在 伦敦。

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.
b 她是 中国人。

Bù wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn.
c 不, 我住在 伦敦。

Bù shì tā shì Riběnrén.
d 不是, 他是 日本人。

4 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Mǎkè shì Riběnrén ma?
1 马克是 日本人 吗?

Mǎkè zhù zài Riběn. Mǎkè bù shì Riběnrén.
a 马克住在 日本。 b 马克不是 日本人。

Ānnà zhù zài nǎlǐ?
2 安娜住在 哪里?

Ānnà zhù zài Běijīng. Ānnà shì Měiguó rén.
a 安娜住在 北京。 b 安娜是 美国人。

Tā shì Shǐdīfū ma?
3 他是 史蒂夫 吗?

Tā shì Yīngguó rén. Bù tā bù shì Shǐdīfū.
a 他是 英国人。 b 不, 他不是 史蒂夫。

Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén?
4 你是 哪 国人?

Nǐ shì Mò'ěrběnrén. Wǒ shì Yīngguó rén.
a 你是 墨尔本人。 b 我是 英国人。

5 Complete the conversation with 哪, 吗 or 不.

Tā shì Ānnà
A: 她是 安娜 _____?

Tā bù shì Ānnà tā shì
B: 她不是 安娜, 她是 Jane。

Tā shì _____ guó rén?
A: 她是 _____ 国人?

Tā shì Yīngguó rén.
B: 她是 英国人。

Tā zhù zài Lúndūn
A: 她住在 伦敦 _____?

tā zhù zài Xīní
B: _____, 她住在 悉尼。

Vocabulary extension

1 Look at the names of nations.

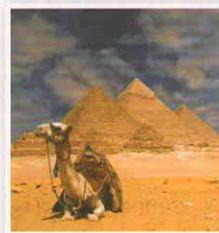
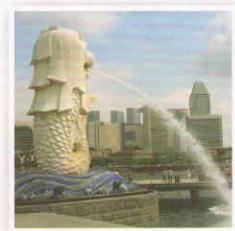
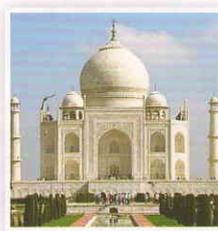
Mòxīgē 墨西哥	Mexico	Xīnjiāpō 新加坡	Singapore
Kěnníyà 肯尼亚	Kenya	Déguó 德国	Germany
Tàiguó 泰国	Thailand	Yìndù 印度	India
Āijí 埃及	Egypt		

Now match the people with the nations.



- 1 Mòxīgē 墨西哥 2 Kěnníyà 肯尼亚 3 Déguó 德国

2 Write the names of the countries under the pictures.

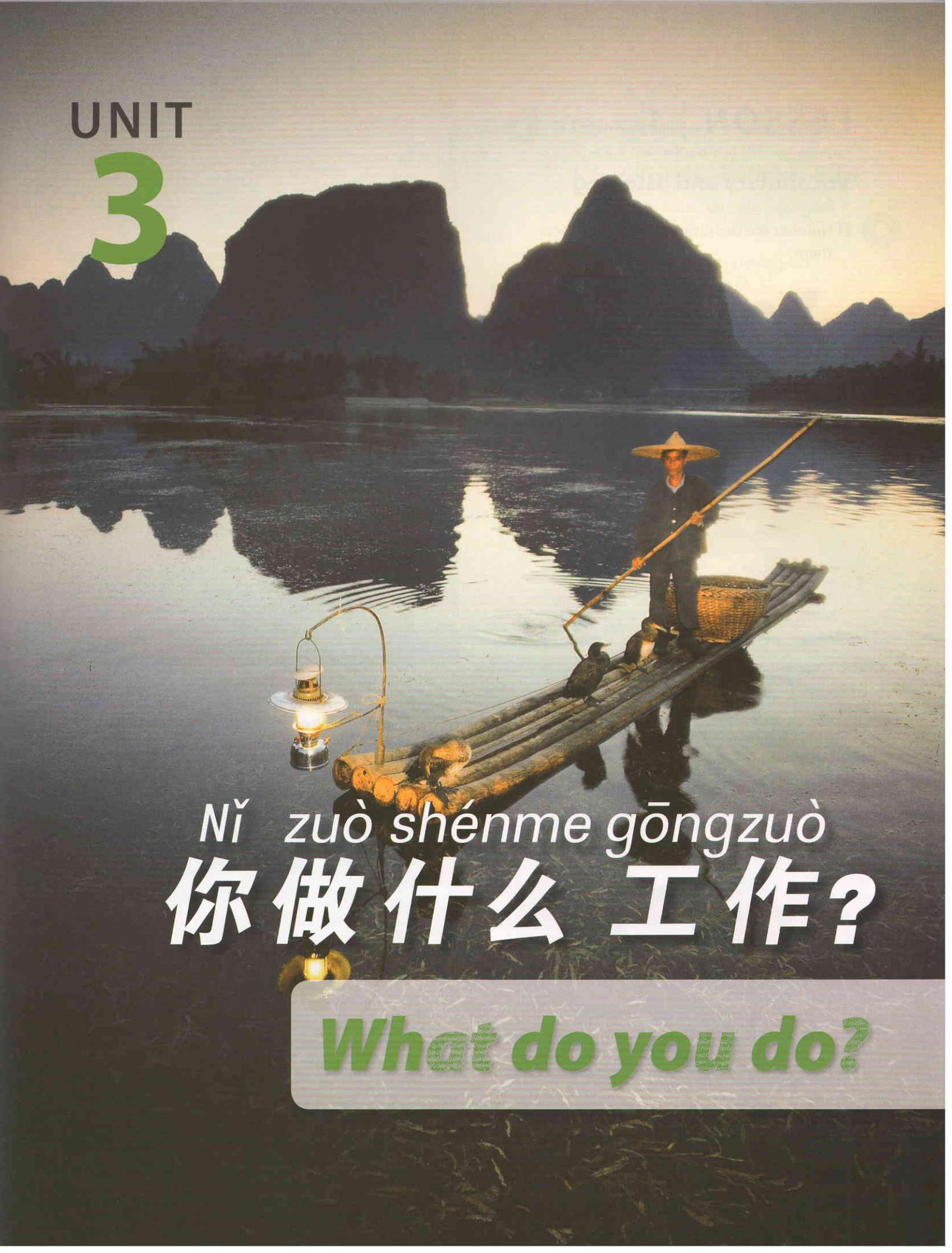


Now say the countries aloud.

Vocabulary list

早上好	zǎoshang hǎo	good morning	但是	dànshì	conj.	but
日本	Rìběn	n. Japan	美国	Měiguó	n.	US
人	rén	n. people	加拿大	Jiānádà	n.	Canada
吗	ma	particle (used to ask questions)	南非	Nánfēi	n.	South Africa
不	bù	adv. not, no	新西兰	Xīnxīlán	n.	New Zealand
哪里	nǎli	pron. where	澳大利亚	Àodàliyà	n.	Australia
哪	nǎ	pron. which	悉尼	Xīní	n.	Sydney
中国	Zhōngguó	n. China	墨尔本	Mò'ěrběn	n.	Melbourne
国	guó	n. country	韩国	Hánguó	n.	Korea
英国	Yīngguó	n. UK	法国	Fǎguó	n.	France
住	zhù	v. live	墨西哥	Mòxīgē	n.	Mexico
在	zài	prep. at, in	肯尼亚	Kěnníyà	n.	Kenya
伦敦	Lúndūn	n. London	泰国	Tàiguó	n.	Thailand
北京	Běijīng	n. Beijing	埃及	Āijí	n.	Egypt
他们	tāmen	pron. they, them	新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore
好莱坞	Hǎoláiwū	n. Hollywood	德国	Déguó	n.	Germany
明星	míngxīng	n. celebrity	印度	Yìndù	n.	India

UNIT
3



Nǐ zuò shénme gōngzuò
你做什么工作？

What do you do?

LESSON 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Number the people in the order you hear them.



a jìzhě
 记者



b yīshēng
 医生



c xuésheng
 学生



d hùshi
 护士

Now listen again and say the words.



2 Label the people in the picture with the words in the box.

bàba māma jiějie dìdì
爸爸 妈妈 姐姐 弟弟



Now listen and say the words.



3 Listen to the conversation.

Mark is telling Yeong-min and Anna about his family.

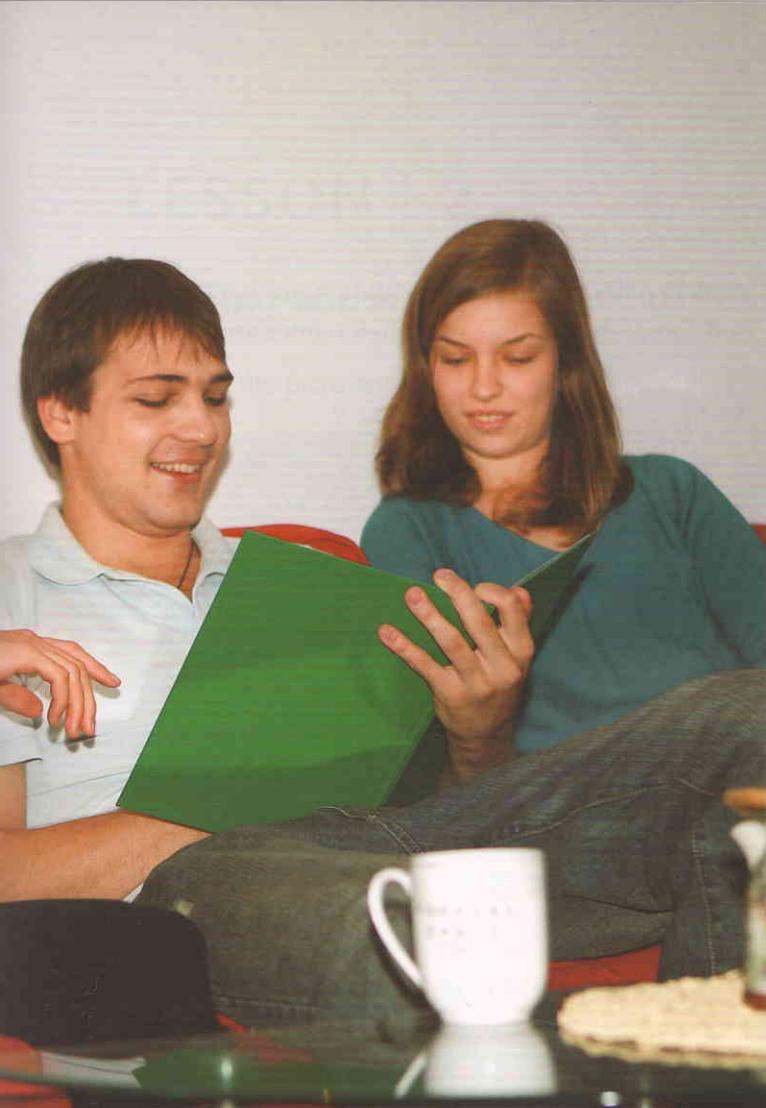
Yǒngmín Tā shì nǐ mèimei ma
永民: 她是你妹妹吗?

Mǎkè Shì tā shì wǒ mèimei Zhè
马克: 是, 她是我妹妹。这
shì wǒ dìdì
是我弟弟。

Yǒngmín Nǐ mèimei hé dìdì yě shì
永民: 你妹妹和弟弟也是
xuésheng ma
学生吗?

Mǎkè Wǒ dìdì shì xuésheng dàn
马克: 我弟弟是学生, 但
shì wǒ mèimei shì jìzhě
是我妹妹是记者。





4 Listen again and answer the questions.

Mǎkè de mèimei zuò shénme gōngzuò

1 马克的妹妹做什么工作?

Mǎkè de bàba zài nǎli gōngzuò

2 马克的爸爸在哪里工作?

Mǎkè de māma shì yīshēng ma

3 马克的妈妈是医生吗?

5 Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use the jobs in Activity 1 to help you.

生词 New words

tā	她	she, her	bàba	爸爸	father
mèimei	妹妹	younger sister	zuò	做	do
zhè	这	this	gōngzuò	工作	work, job
dìdi	弟弟	younger brother	tā	他	he, him
hé	和	and	yīshēng	医生	doctor
yě	也	also	māma	妈妈	mother
xuésheng	学生	student	yīyuàn	医院	hospital
jìzhě	记者	journalist	dōu	都	both, all

Ānnà Nǐ bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò
安娜: 你爸爸做什么工作?

Mǎkè Tā shì yīshēng
马克: 他是医生。

Ānnà Nǐ māma zài nǎli gōngzuò
安娜: 你妈妈在哪里工作?

Mǎkè Tā zài yīyuàn gōngzuò Wǒ
马克: 她在医院工作。我
bàba māma dōu shì yīshēng
爸爸妈妈都是医生。

Pronunciation and speaking

The finals: a, e, i

1-28

1 Listen and check the correct pinyin for the words.

- 1 妈 a mā b me
 2 哪 a nǐ b nǎ
 3 者 a zhě b zhǐ
 4 医 a yī b yā

1-29

2 Say the sentences aloud.

- Zhè shì wǒ yéye
 1 这是我爷爷！
 Tā māma shì lǎoshī
 2 他妈妈是老师。
 Lǐ Lì de bàba yě shì jìzhě
 3 李丽的爸爸也是记者。
 Nǐ dìdì shì yīshēng ma
 4 你弟弟是医生吗？

Now listen and repeat.

1-30

3 Listen and say the words.

- hé yě zhè
 1 和 也 这
 bàba dìdì mèimei
 2 爸爸 弟弟 妹妹
 yīshēng jìzhě gōngzuò
 3 医生 记者 工作



4 Work in pairs. Ask each other about your families, and complete the table with their names and jobs.

- Nǐ bàba jiào shénme míngzi
 A: 你爸爸叫什么名字？
 Wǒ bàba jiào
 B: 我爸爸叫 James Taylor。
 Tā zuò shénme gōngzuò
 A: 他做什么工作？
 Tā shì yīshēng
 B: 他是医生。

	Family member	Name	Occupation
1			
2			
3			
4			

5 Tell the class about your partner's family.

- Tā tā bàba jiào tā shì
 他/她爸爸叫……，他是……。
 Tā tā māma jiào tā shì
 他/她妈妈叫……，她是……。

CHINESE TO GO

1-31

Talking about your family

Wǒ jiějie shì jǐngchá
 我姐姐是警察。

My elder sister is a policewoman.

Zhēn bàng
 真棒！ That's great!

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



- yīyuàn zhàopiàn lǎoshī xuéxiào
 1 医院 2 照片 3 老师 4 学校

3 Check the true statements.

- Wǒ bàba shì yīshēng wǒ māma yě shì
 1 我爸爸是医生，我妈妈也是医生。
- Wǒ gēge shì xuésheng
 2 我哥哥是学生。
- Wǒ jiějie shì hùshi
 3 我姐姐是护士。
- Wǒ shì xuésheng
 4 我是学生。

4 Write about your family. Use Wang Yu's letter to help you.



2 Read Wang Yu's letter about her family.



Shīdìfū
 史蒂夫：

Nǐ hǎo
 你好！

Zhè shì wǒ jiā de zhàopiàn Tā shì wǒ
 这是我家的照片。他是我

bàba tā shì wǒ māma Tāmen dōu zài
 爸爸，她是我妈妈。他们都在
 yīyuàn gōngzuò tāmen dōu shì yīshēng Zhè shì
 医院工作，他们都是医生。这是

wǒ gēge tā zài xuéxiào gōngzuò tā shì
 我哥哥，他在学校工作，他是
 lǎoshī Zhè shì wǒ jiějie tā shì jìzhě
 老师。这是我姐姐，她是记者。

Zhè shì wǒ wǒ shì xuésheng
 这是我，我是学生。……

bàba māma jiějie mèimei gēge dìdì
 爸爸 妈妈 姐姐/妹妹 哥哥/弟弟

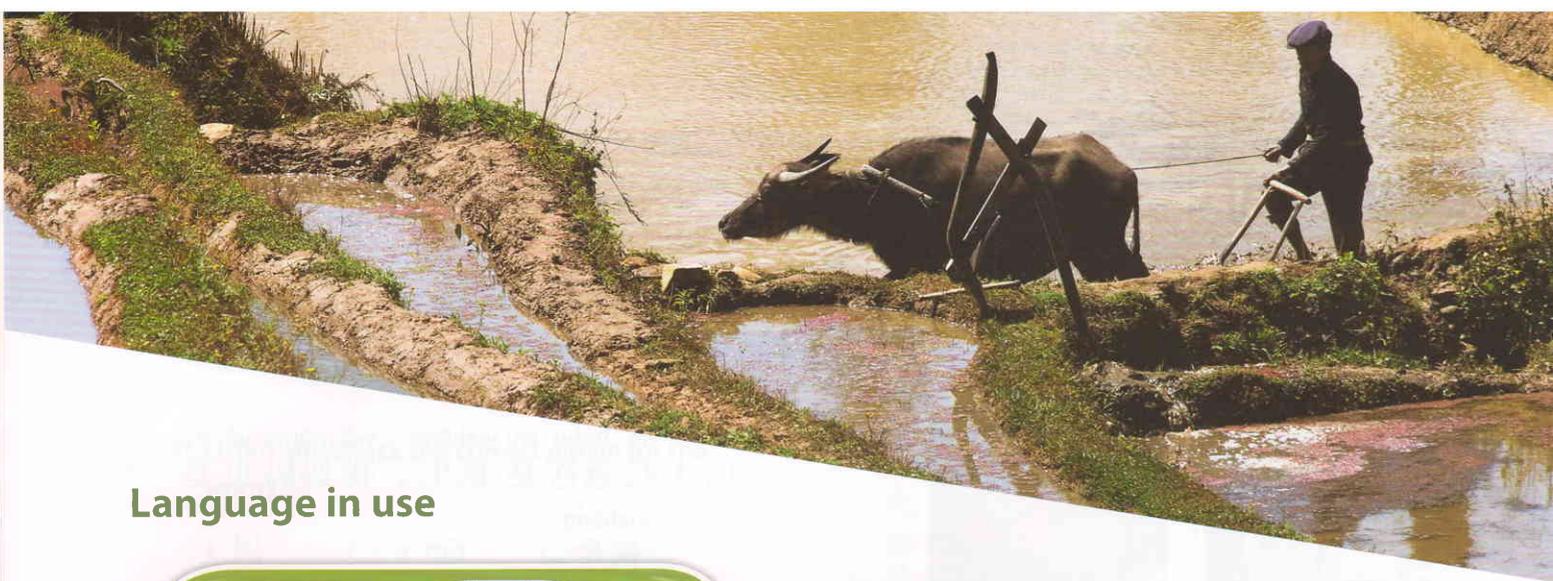


Wǒ jiào _____, wǒ shì _____
 我叫 _____，我是 _____。

Wǒ bàba shì _____ tā zài _____ gōngzuò
 我爸爸是 _____，他在 _____ 工作。

生词 New words

jiā	家	family, home	xuéxiào	学校	school
de	的	structural particle	lǎoshī	老师	teacher
zhàopiàn	照片	photo	jiějie	姐姐	elder sister
gēge	哥哥	elder brother			



Language in use

Adverbs

yě dōu
也 / 都

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒ shì xuésheng
我是学生。 I'm a student.

Mǎkè yě shì xuésheng
马克也是学生。 Mark is also a student.

Wǒ hé Mǎkè dōu shì xuésheng
我和马克都是学生。
Both Mark and I are students.

Now choose the correct word to complete the explanations.

- The adverbs 也 and 都 are used (before/after) the predicate in a sentence.
- The subject of the sentences with the adverb 都 should be (singular/plural).

2 Look at the sentences.

Wǒ bàba bù shì yīshēng
我爸爸不是医生。
My father is not a doctor.

Wǒ māma yě bù shì yīshēng
我妈妈也不是医生。
My mother is not a doctor, either.

Wǒ bàba hé māma dōu bù shì yīshēng
我爸爸和妈妈都不是医生。
Neither my father nor mother is a doctor.

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 不 should come before 也 or 都 in a sentence.
- 2 不 should come after 也 or 都 in a sentence.

3 Rewrite the second sentence with 也.

Wáng Yù xìng Wáng
1 a 王玉姓王。

Wáng Yún xìng Wáng
b 王云姓王。

Shīdìfū bù zhù zài Lúndūn
2 a 史蒂夫不住在伦敦。

Mǎkè bù zhù zài Lúndūn
b 马克不住在伦敦。

Shīdìfū shì xuésheng
3 a 史蒂夫是学生。

Wáng Yù shì xuésheng
b 王玉是学生。

Wǒ bù rènshi Ānnà de māma
4 a 我不认识安娜的妈妈。

Mǎkè bù rènshi Ānnà de māma
b 马克不认识安娜的妈妈。

Now join the two sentences with 都.

▶ Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

Word order of Chinese sentences (II)

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverbial	Verb	Object
Wǒmen 我们	dōu 都	shì 是	xuésheng 学生。
We are all students.			
Wǒ 我	bù 不	shì 是	lǎoshī 老师。
I am not a teacher.			
Tā 他	zài yīyuàn 在医院	gōngzuò 工作。	
He works at the hospital.			
Tā 她	yě zài yīyuàn 也在医院	gōngzuò 工作。	
She also works at the hospital.			

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 The adverbial often comes before the verb it modifies.
- 2 The adverbial usually comes after the verb it modifies.

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

bù shì yě dōu
不 是 也 都

- 1 Tā _____ yīshēng 医生。
- 2 Wǒ _____ shì yīshēng wǒ shì lǎoshī 我是医生，我是老师。
- 3 Wǒmen shì lǎoshī wǒmen _____ zài dàxué gōngzuò 我们是老师，我们 _____ 在大学工作。
- 4 Wǒ zài yīyuàn gōngzuò tā _____ zài yīyuàn gōngzuò 我在医院工作，她 _____ 在医院工作。

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- Zhōngguó rén shì bù Shǐdīfū
1 中国人 / 是 / 不 / 史蒂夫 /。
- Wáng Yù xìng bù Yù
2 王玉 / 姓 / 不 / 玉 /。
- xuésheng bù shì Mǎkè yě
3 学生 / 不 / 是 / 马克 / 也 /。
- Měiguó dōu gōngzuò zài Tāmen
4 美国 / 都 / 工作 / 在 / 他们 /。

▶ Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

Pronouns as modifiers

de
(+的)

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒ māma shì lǎoshī
我妈妈是老师。

Wǒ jiějie shì jìzhě
我姐姐是记者。

Wǒ de míngzì shì Wáng Yù
我的名字是王玉。

Wǒ de gōngzuò shì yīshēng
我的工作 是 医生。

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 的 can be omitted when used before family members.
- 2 的 can be omitted when used before objects.

2 Write the sentences in Chinese using 的 when necessary.

- 1 He is my father.
- 2 This is his photo.
- 3 My name is Mark.
- 4 This is my elder sister's photo.

▶ Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in pairs.

Student A:

You have just started a Chinese language course at Beijing Foreign Studies University. Look at the student registration form below and prepare for an interview with the Admissions Office secretary.

Student B:

You are the secretary of the Admissions Office at Beijing Foreign Studies University. You are interviewing students enrolled in a Chinese language course. Prepare interview questions based on the categories in the form.

2 Work in pairs. Act out the interview using the information you prepared in Activity 1.

Nǐ hǎo Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
你好! 你叫什么名字?

Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
你是哪国人?

Nǐ de jǐnjí liánxìrén shì shéi
你的紧急联系人是谁?

Tāmen jiào shénme míngzi Zuò shénme gōngzuò
他们叫什么名字? 做什么工作?

▶ Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

xuésheng dēngjì biǎo 学生登记表			
xìngmíng 姓名 Name	niánlíng 年龄 Age	guójí 国籍 Nationality	
jǐnjí 紧急 liánxìrén 联系人 Emergency contacts	xìngmíng 姓名 Name	guānxì 关系 Relationship	zhíyè 职业 Occupation
1			
2			
3			

Cultural Corner

Times change, job preferences change!

Job trends in China have changed enormously since the birth of the “reform and opening-up” (改革开放) policy in the late 1970s, encouraging private enterprises. Before that, being a worker or soldier was seen as very noble and desirable. Nearly all jobs guaranteed life-long careers, and jobs which provided security despite poor job performance were called the “unbreakable iron rice bowl” (铁饭碗). However, with economic reforms, civil service jobs and other government iron rice bowls were some of the first to go, and some civil servants left to open up private businesses. In more recent years, even without the old guarantees, civil service jobs have regained their old popularity, providing long-term stability and good benefits.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
宀	roof	安、宾
阝 (right)	city	都

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

家 邮 那 字

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|-----|-------------------|
| 1 家 | a both, all |
| 2 安 | b that |
| 3 都 | c safe and stable |
| 4 那 | d family, home |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

家

宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
家	家	家	家	家	家

安

宀	宀	宀	宀	宀	宀
安	安	安	安	安	安

都

阝	阝	阝	阝	阝	阝
都	都	都	都	都	都

那

阝	阝	阝	阝	阝	阝
那	那	那	那	那	那

Review and practice

1 Put the words in the correct columns.

māma 妈妈	dàxué 大学	lǎoshī 老师	yīyuàn 医院
bàba 爸爸	jiějie 姐姐	yīshēng 医生	jìzhě 记者

jiā tíng chéngyuán 家庭 成员 Family members	dìfāng 地方 Places	zhíyè 职业 Occupations

2 Put the words in brackets in the correct places in the sentences.

- Lín Yuè shì lǎoshī Lín Huá shì lǎoshī yě
1 林月是老师，林华是老师。(也)
- Tāmen shì lǎoshī dōu
2 她们是老师。(都)
- Jiékè bù shì xuésheng Hālì yě shì xuésheng bù
3 杰克不是学生，哈利也是学生。(不)
- Tāmen dōu shì xuésheng bù
4 他们都是学生。(不)

3 Cross out the unnecessary 的 in the sentences.

- Wǒ de māma zài xuéxiào gōngzuò
1 我的妈妈在学校 工作。
- Wǒ de bàba de míngzi shì Lín Guó'ān
2 我的爸爸的名字是林国安。
- Zhè shì wǒ de zhàopiàn
3 这是我的 照片。

4 Write as many sentences as you can with 不, 也, 和 and 都, using the words in the boxes.

bàba 爸爸	gēge 哥哥	lǎoshī 老师	xuésheng 学生	yīshēng 医生
māma 妈妈	jiějie 姐姐	jìzhě 记者	hùshi 护士	

Vocabulary extension

1 Think of people you know who have these jobs.

2 Write the job names under the pictures.

dǎoyóu 导游	tour guide	gōngchéngshī 工程师	engineer
lùshī 律师	lawyer	fúwùyuán 服务员	waiter, waitress
chúshī 厨师	chef	xiūlǐgōng 修理工	mechanic, repairman
mìshū 秘书	secretary	lǐfàshī 理发师	barber, hairdresser



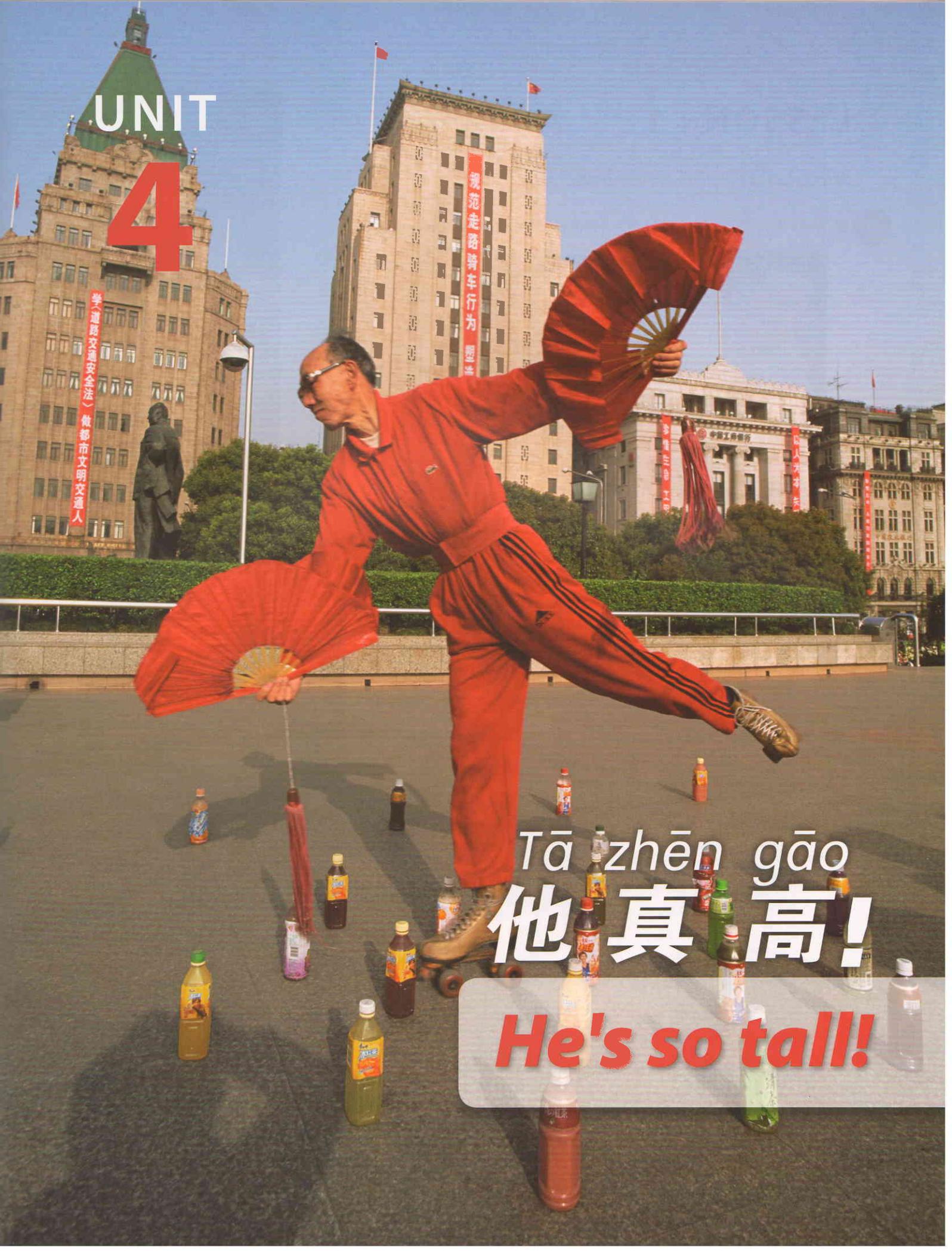
Now work in pairs. Tell each other about these people.

Vocabulary list

她	tā	pron.	she, her	家	jiā	n.	family, home
妹妹	mèimei	n.	younger sister	的	de	structural particle	
这	zhè	pron.	this	照片	zhàopiàn	n.	photo
弟弟	dìdi	n.	younger brother	哥哥	gēge	n.	elder brother
和	hé	conj.	and	学校	xuéxiào	n.	school
也	yě	adv.	also	老师	lǎoshī	n.	teacher
学生	xuésheng	n.	student	姐姐	jiějie	n.	elder sister
记者	jìzhě	n.	journalist	护士	hùshi	n.	nurse
爸爸	bàba	n.	father	导游	dǎoyóu	n.	tour guide
做	zuò	v.	do	律师	lùshī	n.	lawyer
工作	gōngzuò	n./v.	work, job	厨师	chúshī	n.	chef
他	tā	pron.	he, him	秘书	mìshū	n.	secretary
医生	yīshēng	n.	doctor	工程师	gōngchéngshī	n.	engineer
妈妈	māma	n.	mother	服务员	fúwùyuán	n.	waiter, waitress
医院	yīyuàn	n.	hospital	修理工	xiūlǐgōng	n.	mechanic, repairman
都	dōu	adv.	both, all	理发师	lǐfàshī	n.	barber, hairdresser

UNIT

4



Tā zhēn gāo
他真高!

He's so tall!

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Work in pairs. Discuss which adjectives describe these people.



- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> gāo tall | <input type="checkbox"/> niánqīng young | <input type="checkbox"/> kě'ài cute |
| <input type="checkbox"/> kù cool | <input type="checkbox"/> shuài handsome | <input type="checkbox"/> ǎi short |
| <input type="checkbox"/> lǎo old | <input type="checkbox"/> piàoliang pretty | |

Now listen and check the adjectives you hear.



2 Listen to the conversation.

Anna and Wang Yu are talking about Yao Ming.

Ānnà Tā shì shéi Tā shì Yáo Míng shì ma
安娜: 他是谁? 他是姚明, 是吗?

Wáng Yù Shì
王玉: 是。

Ānnà Tā shì nǎlǐ rén
安娜: 他是哪里人?

Wáng Yù Shànghǎirén dànshì xiànzài zhù zài Měiguó
王玉: 上海人, 但是现在住在美国。

Ānnà Tā duō dà Sānshíwǔ suì
安娜: 他多大? 三十五岁?

Wáng Yù Wǒ bù zhīdào
王玉: 我不知道。

Ānnà Tā zhēn gāo
安娜: 他真高!

Wáng Yù Yě hěn shuài hěn kù Tā shì wǒ zuì
王玉: 也很帅, 很酷! 他是我

xǐhuan de lánqiú yùndòngyuán
喜欢的篮球运动员!





生词 New words

shéi 谁	who	gāo 高	tall
Shànghǎi 上海	Shanghai	shuài 帅	handsome
xiànzài 现在	now	kù 酷	cool
duō dà 多大	how old	zuì 最	most
sui 岁	year(s) old	xǐhuan 喜欢	like
zhīdào 知道	know	lánqiú 篮球	basketball
zhēn 真	really, so	yùndòngyuán 运动员	athlete



3 Listen again and answer the questions.

- Yáo Míng shì nǎlǐ rén
1 姚 明 是 哪 里 人?
- Yáo Míng zhù zài nǎlǐ
2 姚 明 住 在 哪 里?
- Yáo Míng zuò shénme gōngzuò
3 姚 明 做 什 么 工 作?



4 Listen and number the people in the order you hear them.



5 Work in pairs. Choose a famous athlete you know and act out the conversation in Activity 2.

Pronunciation and speaking

The finals: ao, uei, en

1 Listen and number the sounds you hear.

ao ui (uei) en

2 Say the sentences aloud.

- Zǎoshang hǎo Gāo lǎoshī
1 早上好，高老师！
- Suí lǎoshī shì Suí Wēi de bàba
2 隋老师是隋薇的爸爸。
- Chén Zhēn shì Shēnzhēnrén
3 陈真是深圳人。
- Tā hěn shuài yě hěn kù
4 他很帅，也很酷！

Now listen and repeat.

3 Listen and say the words.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------|-------------|
| shéi | zuì | suì |
| 1 谁 | 最 | 岁 |
| duō dà | lánqiú | yùndòngyuán |
| 2 多大 | 篮球 | 运动员 |
| xǐhuan | zhīdào | xiànzài |
| 3 喜欢 | 知道 | 现在 |

4 Write notes about one of the people below.

- David Beckham Serena Williams Michael Phelps
- Tā Tā shì rén tā tā zhù zài _____。
- Tā Tā hěn yě hěn _____。
- Tā Tā shì _____。

5 Work in pairs.

Student A: Tell your partner about the person you have written about in Activity 4, but do not say their name. Use your notes to help you.

Student B: Listen and guess the person's identity.

Now change roles.

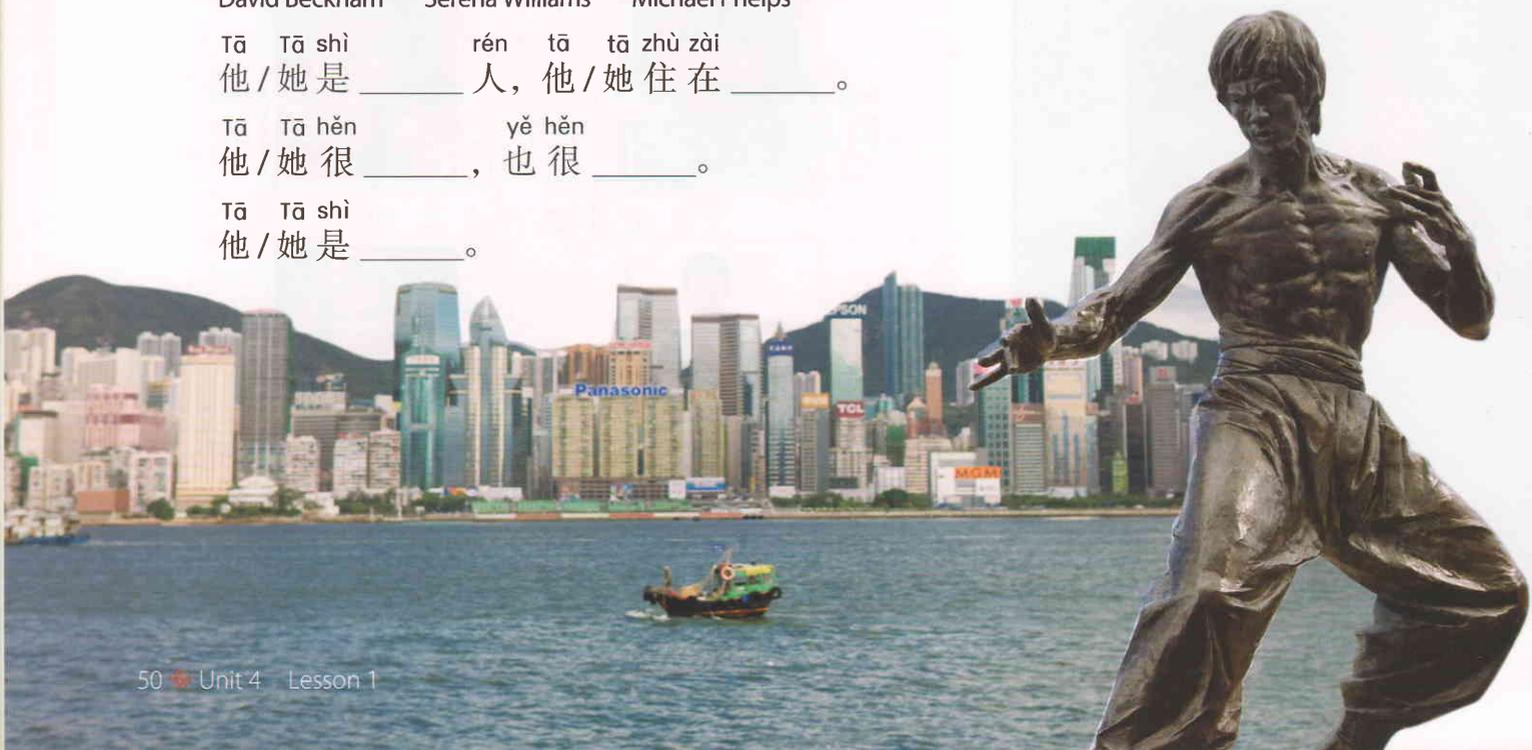
CHINESE TO GO

Welcoming and saying
goodbye to guests

Qǐng jìn
请进。 Please come in.

Mànzǒu
慢走。 Goodbye. (literally:
walk slowly)

Yīhuìr jiàn
一会儿见。 See you later!



LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|------------|-------|------------------|
| xìngmíng | 1 姓名 | a place of birth |
| niánlíng | 2 年龄 | b nationality |
| chūshēngdì | 3 出生地 | c full name |
| guójí | 4 国籍 | d age |

2 Read Wang Yu's Sina profile and check the true statements.

- Wáng Yù shì Shànghǎirén
 1 王玉是上海人。
- Xióngmāo zhēn kù
 2 熊猫真酷!
- Yáo Míng hěn shuài
 3 姚明很帅。
- Lǐ Xiǎolóng hěn kě'ài
 4 李小龙很可爱。

3 Answer the questions.

- Wáng Yù duō dà
 1 王玉多大?
- Wáng Yù de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
 2 王玉的电子邮箱是什么?
- Wáng Yù zuì xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán shì shéi?
 3 王玉最喜欢的运动员是谁?
- Wáng Yù zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi?
 4 王玉最喜欢的演员是谁?

生词 New words

xìngmíng 姓名	full name	dòngwù 动物	animal
niánlíng 年龄	age	xióngmāo 熊猫	panda
chūshēngdì 出生地	place of birth	kě'ài 可爱	cute
guójí 国籍	nationality	yǎnyuán 演员	actor, actress
diànzǐ yóuxiāng 电子邮箱	email box/ address		

新浪博客 博客首页 微博: 最火交流工具 看明星动态 登录 注册 发博文 博文 搜索

首页 | 博文 | 图片 | 关于我

我的资料



博客等级: 22
 博客积分: 806
 博客访问: 5,631,496

我的档案

xìngmíng Wáng Yù niánlíng èrshí suì
 姓名: 王玉 年龄: 二十岁

chūshēngdì Běijīng guójí Zhōngguó
 出生地: 北京 国籍: 中国

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
 电子邮箱: wangyu0521@DC.com

zuì xǐhuan de dòngwù xióngmāo kě'ài
 最喜欢的动物: 熊猫——可爱!

zuì xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán Yáo Míng hěn shuài
 最喜欢的运动员: 姚明——很帅!

zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán Lǐ Xiǎolóng zhēn kù
 最喜欢的演员: 李小龙——真酷!

4 Match the questions with the information they ask for.

- Tā duō dà
1 她多大?
- Tā jiào shénme míngzì
2 她叫什么名字?
- Tā zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi
3 她最喜欢的演员是谁?
- Tā zuì xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán shì shéi
4 她最喜欢的运动员是谁?
- Tā zuì xǐhuan de dòngwù shì shénme
5 她最喜欢的动物是什么?
- Tā de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
6 她的电子邮箱是什么?
- Tā de chūshēngdì shì nǎlǐ
7 她的出生地是哪里?

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| xìngmíng
a 姓名 | niánlíng
b 年龄 |
| chūshēngdì
c 出生地 | diànzǐ yóuxiāng
d 电子邮箱 |
| zuì xǐhuan de rén hé dòngwù
e 最喜欢的人和动物 | |

5 Design an online personal profile for yourself.

Language in use

Interrogative pronoun **shéi 谁**

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject (noun / 谁)	Predicate	
	Verb	Object (noun / 谁)
Tā 她	shì 是	wǒ mèimei 我妹妹。
Tā 她	shì 是	shéi 谁?
Shéi 谁	shì 是	nǐ mèimei 你妹妹?
Wáng Yù 王玉	rènshi 认识	Mǎkè 马克。
Wáng Yù 王玉	rènshi 认识	shéi 谁?
Shéi 谁	rènshi 认识	Mǎkè 马克?

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 The question word **谁** can be used at both the beginning and the end of a question.
- 2 **谁** means "who" or "whom".
- 3 **谁** can only be used in a sentence with **是**.

2 Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences using **谁**.

- Tā shì wǒ māma
1 她是我妈妈。
- Wáng Yù shì wǒ mèimei
2 王玉是我妹妹。
- Zhè shì tā bàba
3 这是他爸爸。

▶ Turn to page 164 for grammar reference.

Numbers in Chinese

1 Look at the numbers.

Chinese	English	Chinese	English
shí 十	ten	shí yī 十一	eleven
èr 二	twenty	shí wǔ 十五	fifteen
sān 三	thirty	èr shí èr 二十二	twenty-two
sì 四	forty	wǔ shí bā 五十八	fifty-eight

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Chinese numbers such as twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by adding an affix to the characters for 2 to 9.
- 2 Chinese numbers such as twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by adding the character for 10 after the characters for 2 to 9.
- 3 Chinese numbers such as eleven, fifteen, twenty-two, etc are formed by adding the characters for 1 to 9 after the characters for 10 to 90.

2 Write the numbers in Chinese.

- 1 fifty 2 seventy 3 twelve 4 thirty-three

▶ Turn to page 164 for grammar reference.

Asking about age using

duō dà
多大

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
Mǎkè 马克	duō dà 多大?	How old is Mark?
Tā 他	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。	He is 19 years old.
Tā Tā 她/他	duō dà 多大?	How old is she/he?
Tā Tā 她/他	sì suì 四岁。	She/He is 4 years old.

Now answer the questions.

- What does 多大 mean?
- Where is 多大 positioned in the Chinese sentence?

2 Write questions for the answers using 多大.

- Wǒ èrshí suì Yǒngmín shíbā suì
- 我二十岁。 3 永民十八岁。
 - 我妈妈五十一岁。

▶ Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

zhēn hěn
真/很 + adjective

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
	Adverb	Adjective
Wǒ 我	zhēn hěn 真/很	gāoxìng 高兴。
I am really/very happy.		
Nǐ māma 你妈妈	zhēn hěn 真/很	niánqīng 年轻。
Your mum is really/very young.		

Now answer the questions.

- In the English sentences, which word appears before adjectives such as "happy" and "young", which is not used in Chinese?
- Are there any differences in word order between these English and Chinese sentences?

2 Translate the sentences into English.

- Yáo Míng hěn shuài
- 姚明很帅。
 - Bàba zhēn gāo
爸爸真高!
 - Wǒ de lǎoshī zhēn niánqīng
我的老师真年轻!

▶ Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in pairs. Choose the three coolest individuals of all time. Think about the reasons for your choice.

Name	Reasons to support your choice
míngzì 名字	lǐyóu 理由

A: Bruce Lee 是最酷的演员，
他的中国功夫很棒。

B: 我喜欢 Michael Jackson，
他是最酷的明星。



2 Work with another pair. Discuss your choice of the coolest people and explain your reasons.

Now vote for the coolest individual of all time.

▶ Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

I was born in the Year of the Horse.

The Chinese zodiac operates on a twelve-year cycle, using the following twelve animals: Rat, Ox, Tiger, Rabbit, Dragon, Snake, Horse, Sheep, Monkey, Rooster, Dog and Pig.

Each animal has certain characteristics that people born under the sign are said to share. Horoscopes were developed around these animal signs to predict a person's personality and destiny.

For example, people born in the Year of the Horse (1966, 1978, 1990 and 2002) are considered to be cheerful, popular and hardworking.

The Chinese zodiac can be used to indirectly find out how old people are, as the age of a person can be calculated through asking their zodiac sign.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
土	earth	在、地
氵	water	江、演

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

墨 澳 坞 法

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|------------|-------|------------------|
| chūshēngdì | 1 出生地 | a Shanghai |
| zài | 2 在 | b pretty |
| piàoliang | 3 漂亮 | c place of birth |
| Shànghǎi | 4 上海 | d at, in |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

地



在



海



海 海 海 海

漂



漂 漂 漂 漂 漂 漂

漂 漂

Review and practice

1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

zhè mèimei wǒ shì
1 这 / 妹妹 / 我 / 是 / 。

piàoliang yě hěn tā hěn gāo
2 漂亮 / 也 / 很 / 她 / 很 / 高 / ！

yùndòngyuán shì tā lánqiú
3 运动员 / 是 / 她 / 篮球 / 。

shíbā suì tā
4 十八 / 岁 / 她 / 。

2 Put the sentences in Activity 1 in the correct order to make a coherent passage.

3 Make as many sentences as you can using 真 and 很 and the words in the box.

māma niánqīng piàoliang
妈妈 年轻 漂亮

dàjiā nǐmen gāo shuài
大家 你们 高 帅

wáng xiǎojiě míngxīng xìnggǎn
王 小姐 明星 性感

gāoxìng jiějie
高兴 姐姐

Vocabulary extension

1 Look at the expressions used to describe people.



tóufa cháng
头发长



tóufa duǎn
头发短



gèzi gāo
个子高

gèzi ǎi
个子矮

2 Describe the people using the appropriate expressions.



1 Tā de _____ hěn _____。
她(的 _____) 很 _____。

2 Tā hěn _____。
他很 _____。

Tā de _____ zhēn _____。
他(的 _____) 真 _____。

Vocabulary list

谁	shéi	<i>pron.</i>	who	• 出生地	chūshēngdì	<i>n.</i>	place of birth
上海	Shànghǎi	<i>n.</i>	Shanghai	• 国籍	guójí	<i>n.</i>	nationality
现在	xiànzài	<i>n.</i>	now	• 电子邮箱	diànzǐ yóuxiāng	<i>n.</i>	email box/address
多大	duō dà		how old	• 动物	dòngwù	<i>n.</i>	animal
岁	suì	<i>n.</i>	year(s) old	• 熊猫	xióngmāo	<i>n.</i>	panda
知道	zhīdào	<i>v.</i>	know	• 可爱	kě'ài	<i>adj.</i>	cute
真	zhēn	<i>adv.</i>	really, so	• 演员	yǎnyuán	<i>n.</i>	actor, actress
高	gāo	<i>adj.</i>	tall	• 老	lǎo	<i>adj.</i>	old
帅	shuài	<i>adj.</i>	handsome	• 年轻	niánqīng	<i>adj.</i>	young
酷	kù	<i>adj.</i>	cool	• 漂亮	piàoliang	<i>adj.</i>	pretty
最	zuì	<i>adv.</i>	most	• 矮	ǎi	<i>adj.</i>	short (height)
喜欢	xǐhuan	<i>v.</i>	like	• 头发	tóufa	<i>n.</i>	hair
篮球	lánqiú	<i>n.</i>	basketball	• 长	cháng	<i>adj.</i>	long
运动员	yùndòngyuán	<i>n.</i>	athlete	• 短	duǎn	<i>adj.</i>	short (length)
姓名	xìngmíng	<i>n.</i>	full name	• 个子	gèzi	<i>n.</i>	(person) height
年龄	niánlíng	<i>n.</i>	age				

Review 1

Vocabulary

1 Match the pictures with the words.



- | | | | |
|----------|-------|----------|-------|
| yīshēng | _____ | Zhōngwén | _____ |
| 1 医生 | | 4 中文 | |
| xuéxiào | _____ | dòngwù | _____ |
| 2 学校 | | 5 动物 | |
| xuésheng | _____ | jìzhě | _____ |
| 3 学生 | | 6 记者 | |

2 Write ten words with the characters in the box.

shén 什	xué 学	dàn 但	gōng 工
shēng 生	me 么	zhù 住	shí 识
nǎ 哪	kě 可	rèn 认	piàn 片
zài 在	zuò 作	shì 是	lǐ 里
yī 医	zhào 照	yuàn 院	ài 爱

3 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

nǐ hǎo 你好	jiào 叫	míngxīng 明星	rén 人
jiějie 姐姐	piàoliang 漂亮	duō dà 多大	shuài 帅

1 A: Tā shì nǎ guó _____?
他是哪国 _____?

B: Tā shì Měiguórén.
他是美国人。

2 A: _____!

Qǐngwèn nǐ _____ shénme míngzi?
请问, 你 _____ 什么名字?

B: Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù.
我叫王玉。

3 A: Tā shì nǐ _____ ma?
她是你 _____ 吗?

Tā zhēn _____。
她真 _____。

B: Bù tā shì wǒ māma.
不, 她是我妈妈。

4 A: Nǐ rènshi Lǐ Xiǎolóng ma?
你认识李小龙吗?

Tā shì _____。
他是 _____。

B: Wǒ rènshi tā tā hěn _____。
我认识他, 他很 _____。

5 A: Nǐ shì xuésheng ma Nǐ _____?
你是学生吗? 你 _____?

B: Wǒ shì xuésheng wǒ shíwǔ suì.
我是学生, 我十五岁。

Grammar

1 Match the questions with the answers.

- Wáng Yù de gēge zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò
1 王 玉 的 哥 哥 在 哪 里 工 作 ?
- Tā duō dà
2 她 多 大 ?
- Nǐ xìng Lǐ ma
3 你 姓 李 吗 ?
- Tā shì shéi
4 他 是 谁 ?
- Ānnà zhù zài nǎlǐ
5 安 娜 住 在 哪 里 ?
- Mǎkè shì xuéshēng Mǎkè de mèimèi ne
6 马 克 是 学 生 ， 马 克 的 妹 妹 呢 ?

- Tā mèimèi shì jìzhě
a 他 妹 妹 是 记 者 。
- Wǒ bù xìng Lǐ wǒ xìng Wáng
b 我 不 姓 李 ， 我 姓 王 。
- Tā zài xuéxiào gōngzuò
c 他 在 学 校 工 作 。
- Tā shì Yáo Míng
d 他 是 姚 明 。
- Tā wǔ suì
e 她 五 岁 。
- Tā zhù zài Měiguó
f 她 住 在 美 国 。

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

yě dōu nǎlǐ zhēn nǎ hěn
也 都 哪 里 真 哪 很

- Mǎkè shì _____ rén
1 马 克 是 _____ 人 ?
- Ānnà _____ piàoliang
2 安 娜 _____ 漂 亮 。
- Tā de mèimei _____ niánqīng
3 他 的 妹 妹 _____ 年 轻 。
- Tā shì yīshēng tā bàba _____ shì yīshēng
4 他 是 医 生 ， 他 爸 爸 _____ 是 医 生 。
- Wǒmen _____ shì xuéshēng
5 我 们 _____ 是 学 生 。
- Tā shì _____ guó rén
6 他 是 _____ 国 人 ?

3 Write questions for the answers using 谁, 吗, 哪里 and 你呢 where appropriate.

- Wǒ yě zhù zài Lúndūn
1 我 也 住 在 伦 敦 。
- Tā shì wǒ jiějie
2 她 是 我 姐 姐 。
- Tā zhù zài Běijīng
3 他 住 在 北 京 。
- Wǒ zhù zài Mò'ěrběn dànshì wǒ bù shì Àodàliyàrén
4 我 住 在 墨 尔 本 ， 但 是 我 不 是 澳 大 利 亚 人 。

4 Complete the passage with the words in the box. You can use some words more than once.

zhù zài	shì	dōu	xìng
住 在	是	都	姓
yǎnyuán	yě	hěn	sui
演 员	也	很	岁

Wáng Yù _____ Wáng bù _____ Yù
王 玉 _____ 王 ， 不 _____ 玉 。

Tā _____ Zhōngguó rén tā de niánlíng shì _____
她 _____ 中 国 人 ， 她 的 年 龄 是 _____

èrshí _____ Tā _____ Běijīng Tā
二 十 _____ 。 她 _____ 北 京 。

Tā bàba zài yīyuàn gōngzuò tā māma _____ zài
她 爸 爸 在 医 院 工 作 ， 她 妈 妈 _____ 在

yīyuàn gōngzuò tāmen _____ shì yīshēng
医 院 工 作 ， 他 们 _____ 是 医 生 。

Wáng Yù zuì xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán shì Yáo Míng
王 玉 最 喜 欢 的 运 动 员 是 姚 明 ，

tā _____ gāo yě hěn shuài Tā zuì xǐhuan
他 _____ 高 ， 也 很 帅 。

Tā zuì xǐhuan de _____ shì Lǐ Xiǎolóng
她 最 喜 欢 的 _____ 是 李 小 龙 。

Integrated skills

1 Listen and circle the words you hear.

Tā shì shéi

A: 他是谁?

Tā shì wǒ gēge dìdi

B: 他是我 (哥哥 / 弟弟)。

Tā duō dà

A: 他多大?

Tā sānshí suì èrshí suì

B: 他 (三十岁 / 二十岁)。

Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ

A: 他住在哪里?

Tā zhù zài Àodàliyà Jiānádà

B: 他住在 (澳大利亚 / 加拿大)。

Tā zuò shénme gōngzuò

A: 他做什么工作?

Tā shì xuésheng yīshēng

B: 他是 (学生 / 医生)。

2 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Shǐdìfū shì Yīngguó rén ma

1 史蒂夫是英国人吗?

Shì dànshì tā zhù zài Běijīng

a 是, 但是他住在北京。

Bù tā bù zhù zài Lúndūn

b 不, 他不住在伦敦。

Nǐ zài yīyuàn gōngzuò ma

2 你在医院工作吗?

Shì wǒ shì yīshēng

a 是, 我是医生。

Bù wǒ bù shì xuésheng

b 不, 我不是学生。

Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de míngxīng shì shéi

3 你最喜欢的明星是谁?

Lǐ Xiǎolóng

a 李小龙。

Wǒ bù shì míngxīng

b 我不是明星。

3 Work in pairs. Complete the conversations.



Nǐ hǎo

1 A: 你好! _____?

Wǒ jiào

B: 我叫_____。_____?

A: _____。

Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng

B: 认识你很高兴。



Zhè shì wǒ māma zhè shì wǒ bàba

2 A: 这是我妈妈, 这是我爸爸。

B: _____?

Tā shì wǒ jiějie

A: 她是我姐姐。

B: _____?

Tā shì hùshì

A: 她是护士。

B: _____?

A: _____。

4 Complete the Sina profile with your own information.

新浪博客 博客首页 微博 防火交流工具 看明星动态 登录 注册 繁体中文 搜索

首页 | 博文 | 图片 | 关于我

我的资料

我的档案

xìngmíng 姓名: niánlíng 年龄:

chūshēngdì 出生地: guójí 国籍:

diànzǐ yóuxiāng 电子邮箱:

zài xǐhuan de dòngwù 最喜欢的动物:

zài xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán 最喜欢的运动员:

zài xǐhuan de yǎnyuán 最喜欢的演员:

博客等级: 22
博客积分: 806
博客访问: 5,631,496

Enjoy Chinese



- lǎo 老 old
- lǎorén 老人 old man
- lǎoshī 老师 teacher
- lǎobǎn 老板 boss



The original meaning of 老 is "old". Its ancient shape looks like an old man walking with a crutch.

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's profiles.

5 Complete the passage with the words in the box.

- | | | | |
|----------|--------------|----------|--------|
| Zhōngguó | yùndòngyuán | Měiguó | xǐhuan |
| 中国 | 运动员 | 美国 | 喜欢 |
| gāo | bàba hé māma | xuésheng | yīyuàn |
| 高 | 爸爸和妈妈 | 学生 | 医院 |

Tā shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de lánqiú _____, tā hěn _____. Tā shì _____ rén, dànshì tā xiànzài zhù zài _____。

Tā _____ dōu zhù zài Zhōngguó, tā jiějie hé dìdì yě zhù zài Zhōngguó。 Tā jiějie shì hùshì, zài _____ gōngzuò, tā dìdì shì _____, yě shì lánqiú yùndòngyuán, tāmen dōu _____ lánqiú。

Tā shì Yáo Míng
他是姚明!



BJJ-07-D

UNIT
5

Zhè shì wǒ de
这是我的
diànhuà hàomǎ
电话号码。

Here's my phone number.

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the pictures with the words.



a



b



c



d

diànhuà

1 电话

shǒujī

2 手机

hàomǎ

3 号码

gōngyuán

4 公园

Now listen and say the words.



2 Write the telephone numbers you hear.

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____

Now listen again and check your answers.



3 Listen to the conversation.

Yeong-min is asking Steve for his address and phone number.

Yǒngmín Shǐdīfū nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì ma
永民：史蒂夫，你的电话号码是 55546998 吗？

Shǐdīfū Shì zhè shì wǒ jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ
史蒂夫：是，这是我家的电话号码。

Yǒngmín Nǐ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì duōshao
永民：你的手机号码是多少？

Shǐdīfū Wǒ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì
史蒂夫：我的手机号码是 12081345761。

Yǒngmín Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ
永民：你住在哪里？

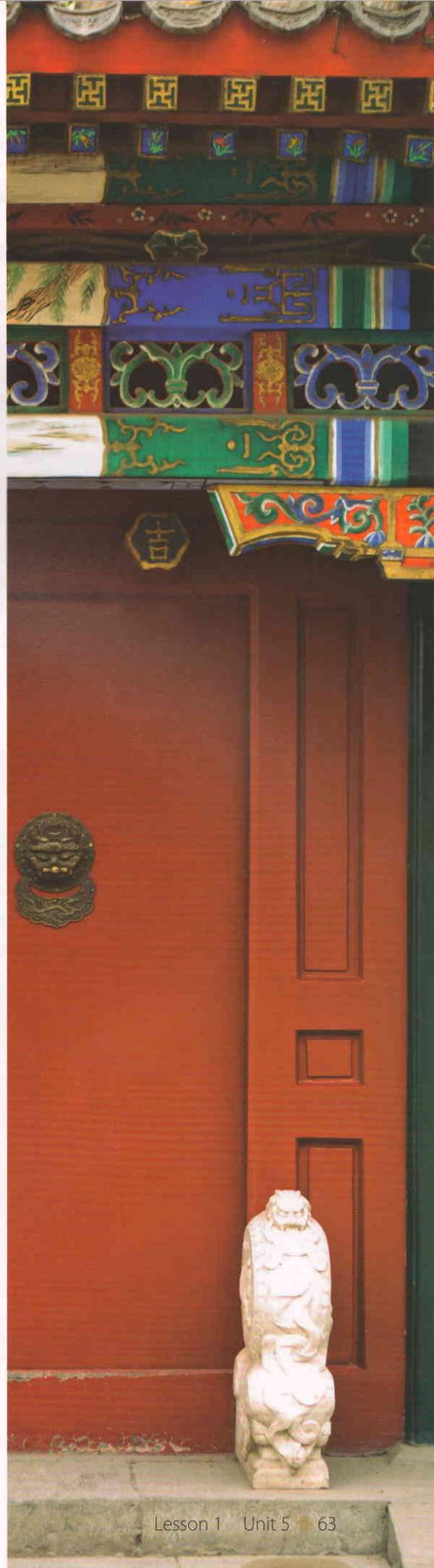
Shǐdīfū Wǒ zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào
史蒂夫：我住在公园路 19 号。

Yǒngmín Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
永民：你的电子邮箱是什么？

Shǐdīfū
史蒂夫：steve@DC.com。

生词 New words

diànhuà	电话	telephone	gōngyuán	公园	park
hàomǎ	号码	number, code	lù	路	road
shǒujī	手机	mobile phone	hào	号	number, date (spoken)
duōshao	多少	what, how many/much			



4 Listen again and answer the questions.

- Shǐdīfū jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao
- 1 史蒂夫家的电话号码是多少?
- Shǐdīfū zhù zài nǎlǐ
- 2 史蒂夫住在哪里?
- Shǐdīfū de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
- 3 史蒂夫的电子邮箱是什么?



5 Listen and check the numbers you hear.

- Yǒngmín zhù zài Dàxué Lù _____ hào
- 1 永民住在大学路 _____ 号。
- a 313 b 213
- Tā jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì _____。
- 2 他家的电话号码是 _____。
- a 55592134 b 55591234
- Tā de shǒujī hàomǎ shì _____。
- 3 他的手机号码是 _____。
- a 12901052227 b 12910055227

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using your own addresses and phone numbers.



Pronunciation and speaking

The tones of

bù
不

1 Look at the tone marks for 不. How does the tone of 不 change?

bù gāoxìng
不 高兴

bù niánqīng
不 年轻

bù hǎo
不 好

bú shì
不 是

Now listen and say the words.

2 Listen and write the correct tones for 不.

1 不可爱

2 不帅

3 不姓

4 不叫

5 不高

6 不酷

7 不漂亮

8 不认识

3 Read the sentences aloud. Make sure you change the tone of 不 when necessary.

1 Wǒ bú xìng Wáng.
我不姓王。

2 Wǒ bù zhīdào.
我不知道。

3 Tā bù xǐhuan Yáo Míng.
他不喜欢姚明。

4 Zhè bú shì wǒ de yóuxiāng.
这不是我的邮箱。

5 Tā bù niánqīng.
她不年轻。

Now listen and repeat.



4 Listen and say the words.

1 diànhuà shǒujī hàomǎ
电话 手机 号码

2 zhè shì duōshǎo shénme
这是 多少 什么

3 nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng
你的 电子 邮箱

5 Work in groups. Ask and answer questions about phone numbers and email addresses. Use the prompts below to help you.

Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo
你的电话号码是多少?

Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
你的电子邮箱是什么?



CHINESE TO GO

Receiving and ending phone calls

Wèi

喂。

Hello!

Nǐ zhǎo shéi ya
你找谁呀?

Who do you want to speak to?

Dǎ cuò le

打错了。

Wrong number.

Duìbuqǐ

对不起。

Sorry.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Look at the mobile phone screen and guess the meaning of the words.



2 Read the messages between Mark and Wang Yu and answer the questions.

Mǎkè de xīn dìzhǐ shì shénme

1 马克的新地址是什么?

Mǎkè de xīn diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao

2 马克的新电话号码是多少?

Wáng Yù de shǒujī hàomǎ shì duōshao

3 王玉的手机号码是多少?

Ānnà zhù zài nǎlǐ

4 安娜住在哪里?

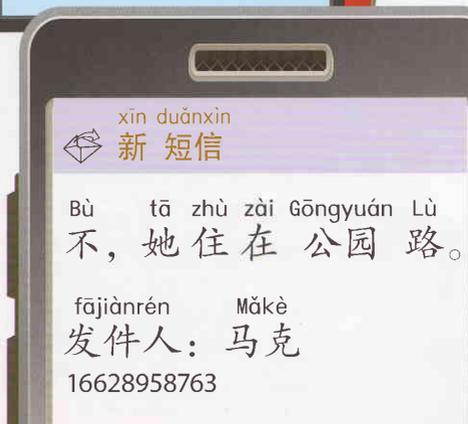
3 Read the text message and write a reply.



Nǐ hǎo Wǒ de dìzhǐ shì
你好! 我的地址是……

生词 New words

xīn	新	new
dìzhǐ	地址	address
dàxué	大学	university
gōngyù	公寓	block of flats, apartment building
fángjiān	房间	room
kěyǐ	可以	may, can
gěi	给	give, to
dǎ diànhuà	打电话	make a phone call
fājiàn rén	发件人	sender
shōudào	收到	receive
xièxie	谢谢	thank you



4 Work in pairs.

Student A: You have lost your suitcase. Ask Student B at the Lost Luggage Office to help you find it.

Student B: You work at the Lost Luggage Office. Make notes about Student A's lost suitcase. Use the prompts below to help you.



Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?
你叫什么名字?

Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén?
你是哪里人?

Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?
你的电话号码是多少?

Nǐ de dìzhǐ shì shénme?
你的地址是什么?

Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme?
你的电子邮箱是什么?

Language in use

Question word

duōshao
多少

1 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Tā de shǒujī hàomǎ shì duōshao?
1 他的手机号码是多少?

Tā de shǒujī hàomǎ shì
a 他的手机号码是 13323455928。

Tā zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù èrshíyī hào
b 他住在公园路 21 号。

Mǎkè de fángjiānhào shì duōshao?
2 马克的房间号是多少?

Mǎkè bù zhù zài wǔlíngbā
a 马克不住在 508 。

Mǎkè de fángjiānhào shì wǔlíngliù
b 马克的房间号是 506 。

Shǐdīfū zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù duōshao hào?
3 史蒂夫住在公园路多少号?

Shíjiǔ hào
a 19 号。

Dàxué Lù
b 大学路。

2 Look at the pictures and write a question using 多少 for each and an appropriate answer.



1

A: _____?

B: _____。



2

A: _____?

B: _____。

▶ Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

Word order of Chinese addresses

1 Look at the phrases.

Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào
公园路 19 号

Dàxué Lù Dàxuéshēng Gōngyù wǔlíngliù hào fángjiān
大学路 大学生公寓 506 号 房间

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 The word order of Chinese addresses goes from big to small.
- 2 The word order of Chinese addresses goes from small to big.

2 Write the addresses in Chinese.

- 1 No. 8 University Road
- 2 Room 203, Yu Building, No. 20 Park Road

▶ Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

The pronunciation of the number "1"



1 Listen to the phrases.

- 1 yī èr sān sì
一 二 三 四
- 2 yī tiān
一天
- 3 55531213
- 4 yāo' èrbā hào fángjiān
128 号 房间

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 The number "1" is pronounced *yī* in ordinary counting.
- 2 The number "1" is pronounced *yāo* in ordinary counting.
- 3 The number "1" is pronounced *yāo* in telephone and room numbers.



2 Read the sentences aloud.

- 1 suì
21 岁
- 2 Fángjiān hào shì
房间 号 是 1280 。
- 3 Diànhuà hàomǎ shì
电话 号码 是 3181 。
- 4 gè fángjiān
11 个 房间

Now listen and repeat.

▶ Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

LESSON 3

Communication activity

1 Work in pairs.

Student A:

Your school is in the process of updating its student records. You are asked to provide the following information to the school office:

- Your emergency contact number. The number should include the country code and area code. xuéshēng kǎ
- Your student card number (学生卡 hàomǎ 号码).

Student B:

You work in the school office and are in the process of updating the student records. You are asked to do the following:

- Write down the student's emergency contact number. xuéshēng kǎ
- Record the student card number (学生卡 hàomǎ 号码).

2 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation using the information you prepared in Activity 1.

3 Change roles and act out the conversation again.

▶ Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

The Chinese way of thinking: from large to small

What is the date today? The answer in Chinese could be 2009年9月19号 (19 September 2009). Chinese people tend to organize their thoughts from large to small, from general to specific, or from collective to individual. You can find this phenomenon in various aspects of Chinese tradition. In the common Chinese address format, for example, 中国北京市海淀区北京外国语大学9号楼504房间, the sequence goes from larger areas to smaller ones. This contrasts with Western formats which are usually from smaller to larger areas, for example, Room 504, No. 9 Building, Beijing Foreign Studies University, Haidian District, Beijing, China.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
讠	speech	认识、话
辶	walk	这、退

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

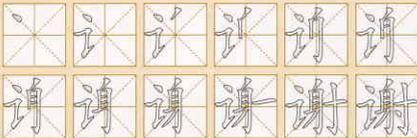
记 送 谁 过

2 Match the words with the meanings.

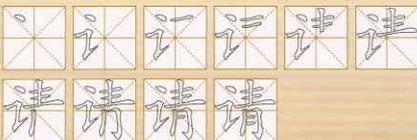
- | | | |
|---------|------|-------------|
| fāsòng | 1 发送 | a excuse me |
| tuìchū | 2 退出 | b thanks |
| xièxie | 3 谢谢 | c send |
| qǐngwèn | 4 请问 | d exit |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

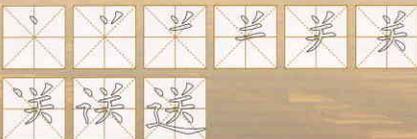
谢



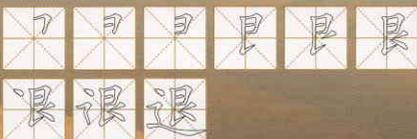
请



送



退



Review and practice



1 Listen and check the numbers you hear.

- 1 a 88346693 b 88384639
2 a 12942355734 b 12943257534

2 Match the questions with the answers.

- Nǐ jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo
1 你家的电话号码是多少?
Nǐ de fángjiānhào shì duōshǎo
2 你的房间号是多少?
Wǒ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì _____ nǐ de ne
3 我的手机号码是17978332624, 你的呢?
Zhè shì nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ ma
4 这是你的电话号码吗?
Nǐ zhù zài wǔlíngbā hào fángjiān ma
5 你住在 508 号房间吗?

- Bù zhè bù shì wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ
a 不, 这不是我的电话号码。
b 010-23897768。
Shì
c 是。
Yāoyāosān
d 113。
Wǒ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì
e 我的手机号码是19810787643。

3 Write questions with 多少 for the answers.

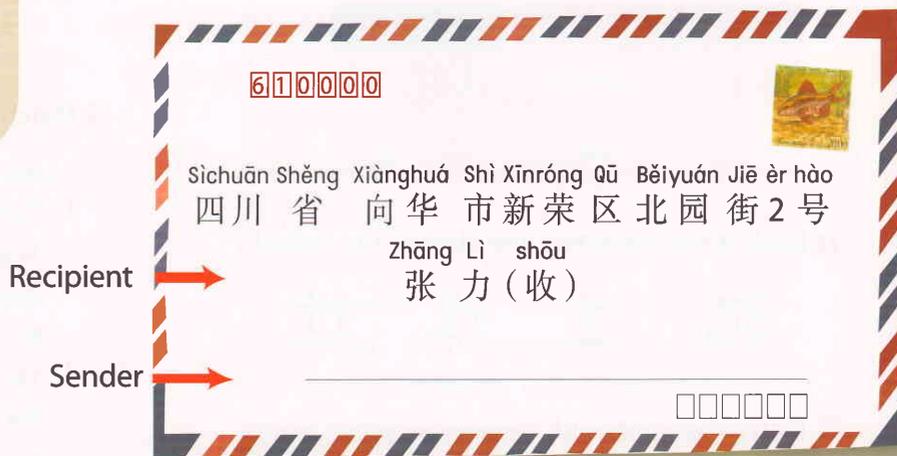
- sānlíngbāqī hào fángjiān
1 3087 号房间。
Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào
2 公园路 19 号。
3 72298111。

Vocabulary extension

1 Read the words in the box.

shěng 省	province	qū 区	district
shì 市	city	jiē 街	street

2 Look at the envelope.



Now add your address as the sender.

Vocabulary list

电话	diànhuà	<i>n.</i>	telephone	给	gěi	<i>v./prep.</i>	give, to
号码	hàomǎ	<i>n.</i>	number, code	打电话	dǎ diànhuà		make a phone call
手机	shǒujī	<i>n.</i>	mobile phone	发件人	fājiàn rén	<i>n.</i>	sender
多少	duōshao	<i>pron.</i>	what, how many/much	收到	shōudào	<i>v.</i>	receive
公园	gōngyuán	<i>n.</i>	park	谢谢	xièxie	<i>v.</i>	thank you
路	lù	<i>n.</i>	road	收件箱	shōujiànxiāng	<i>n.</i>	inbox
号	hào	<i>n.</i>	number, date (spoken)	发送	fāsòng	<i>v.</i>	send
新	xīn	<i>adj.</i>	new	短信	duǎnxìn	<i>n.</i>	message
地址	dìzhǐ	<i>n.</i>	address	退出	tuìchū	<i>v.</i>	exit, go back
大学	dàxué	<i>n.</i>	university	省	shěng	<i>n.</i>	province
公寓	gōngyù	<i>n.</i>	block of flats, apartment building	市	shì	<i>n.</i>	city
房间	fángjiān	<i>n.</i>	room	区	qū	<i>n.</i>	district
可以	kěyǐ	<i>v.</i>	may, can	街	jiē	<i>n.</i>	street

UNIT

6

道
惟
在

Jīntiān jǐ hào
今天几号?

What's the date today?

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Number the months in the order you hear them.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> a 五月 | <input type="checkbox"/> c 七月 | <input type="checkbox"/> e 一月 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> b 六月 | <input type="checkbox"/> d 九月 | <input type="checkbox"/> f 二月 |

Now listen again and say the months.



2 Number the dates in the order you hear them.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> a 二月九号 | <input type="checkbox"/> c 二月五号 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> b 七月十七号 | <input type="checkbox"/> d 六月三号 |

Now listen again and say the dates.



3 Number the days in the order you hear them.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> a 星期三 | Monday |
| <input type="checkbox"/> b 星期五 | Tuesday |
| <input type="checkbox"/> c 星期四 | Wednesday |
| <input type="checkbox"/> d 星期六 | Thursday |
| <input type="checkbox"/> e 星期二 | Friday |
| <input type="checkbox"/> f 星期一 | Saturday |
| <input type="checkbox"/> g 星期日 / 星期天 | Sunday |

Now match them with the days in English.



4 Listen to the conversation.

Mark and Yeong-min are talking about birthdays.

Mǎkè Yǒngmín Èryuè jiǔ hào shì
 马克：永民，二月九号是
 Wáng Yù de shēngrì
 王玉的生日。

Yǒngmín Zhēn de ma Jīntiān jǐ hào?
 永民：真的吗？今天几号？

Mǎkè Jīntiān Èryuè wǔ hào
 马克：今天二月五号。

Yǒngmín Jiǔ hào xīngqī jǐ
 永民：九号星期几？

Mǎkè Xīngqītiān Wǒmen qǐng tā
 马克：星期天。我们请她
 chīfàn zěnmeyàng
 吃饭，怎么样？



生词 New words

Èryuè 二月	February	chī 吃	eat
yuè 月	month	qù 去	go
shēngrì 生日	birthday	chúfáng 厨房	kitchen
zhēn de 真的	really	zěnmeyàng 怎么样	how about
jīntiān 今天	today	nàlǐ 那里	there
jǐ 几	how many	Zhōngcān 中餐	Chinese food
Xīngqītiān 星期天	Sunday	cān 餐	cuisine, meal
xīngqī 星期	week	hǎochī 好吃	tasty
wǒmen 我们	we, us	méi wèntí 没问题	no problem
chīfàn 吃饭	have a meal		

Yǒngmín Hǎo qù nǎlǐ
永民：好，去哪里？

Mǎkè Qù Māma Chúfáng
马克：去“妈妈厨房”

zěnmeyàng Nàlǐ de Zhōngcān
怎么样？那里的中餐

hěn hǎochī
很好吃。

Yǒngmín Hǎo méi wèntí
永民：好，没问题。



5 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 Wáng Yù de shēngrì shì jǐ hào?
王玉的生日是几号？
- 2 Wáng Yù de shēngrì shì xīngqī jǐ?
王玉的生日是星期几？
- 3 Jīntiān jǐ hào Xīngqī jǐ?
今天几号？星期几？
- 4 Tāmen qù nǎlǐ chī Zhōngcān?
他们去哪里吃中餐？

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 4 using your friends' birthdays.

Pronunciation and speaking

The initials: j, q, x

1 Listen and say the words.

- | | | | |
|---|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1 | jiějie
姐姐 | jīntiān
今天 | fángjiān
房间 |
| 2 | qǐngwèn
请问 | niánqīng
年轻 | lánqiú
篮球 |
| 3 | gāoxìng
高兴 | míngxīng
明星 | xuéshēng
学生 |

2 Listen and check the correct pinyin.

- 1 Jīntiān shì èrshíqī hào.
今天 是 二十七号。
 èrshíqī èrshíjī èrshíxī
- 2 Tā hěn xǐhuan xióngmāo.
她 很 喜欢 熊猫。
 qǐhuan jǐhuan xǐhuan
- 3 Jiějie zài Běiqīng gōngzuò.
姐姐 在 北京 工作。
 Běiqīng Běijīng Běixīng

3 Say the sentences aloud.

- 1 Wǒ xìng Qí jiào Qí Jīn.
我 姓 齐, 叫 齐 金。
- 2 Jīntiān shì qīyuè jiǔ hào, Xīngqīyī.
今天 是 七月 九号, 星期 一。
- 3 Wǒ xiǎng qǐng jiějie chī xīcān.
我 想 请 姐姐 吃 西餐。

Now listen and repeat.

Jiǔyuè 九月						
Xīngqīrì 星期日	Xīngqīyī 星期一	Xīngqī'èr 星期二	Xīngqīsān 星期三	Xīngqīsì 星期四	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Xīngqīliù 星期六
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	

4 Work in pairs. Use the calendar at the bottom of the left column to say the dates and days.

Student A: Choose five dates from the calendar and say them aloud.

Student B: Listen to the five dates and say the corresponding days.

A: Jiǔyuè bā hào B: Xīngqīsì
九月 八号 星期四

Now change roles.

5 Work in pairs. Ask about the birthdays of each other's family members or friends.

Nǐ bàba de shēngrì shì jǐ yuè jǐ hào?
你 爸爸 的 生日 是 几 月 几 号?

people	shēngrì 生日	people	shēngrì 生日
bàba 爸爸		dìdi 弟弟	
māma 妈妈			
jiějie 姐姐			

CHINESE TO GO

Making and accepting invitations

Jīntiān shì wǒ de shēngrì.
今天 是 我的 生日。 Today is my birthday.

Shēngrì kuàilè!
生日 快乐! Happy birthday!

Wǎnshàng wǒ qǐng nǐ chī Zhōngcān zěnmeyàng?
晚上 我 请 你 吃 中餐, 怎么样?

How about I invite you for a Chinese meal this evening?

Tài hǎo le! Xièxie nǐ.
太 好 了! 谢 谢 你。 That's great! Thank you.

Bù kèqì.
不 客 气。 You're welcome.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



1 shàngbān
上班



2 jiànmiàn
见面



3 pàiduì
派对



4 kànshū
看书

2 Read Anna's weekly planner and answer the questions.

- 1 安娜 星期几 上班?
- 2 安娜 星期几 跟 马克 去 吃 中餐?
- 3 安娜 星期几 跟 老师 见面?
- 4 史蒂夫 星期几 生日?

生词 New words

Liùyuè 六月	June	dǎ 打	play (ball game with hands)
rì 日	date (written)	gēn 跟	with
Xīngqīrì 星期日	Sunday	jiànmiàn 见面	meet up
Xīngqīyī 星期一	Monday	kàn 看	read, see
Xīngqī'èr 星期二	Tuesday	shū 书	book
Xīngqīsān 星期三	Wednesday	shàngbān 上班	go to work
Xīngqīsì 星期四	Thursday	xué 学	study, learn
Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Friday	pàiduì 派对	party
Xīngqīliù 星期六	Saturday		

Liùyuè sān rì jiǔ rì
六月 三日—九日

	Xīngqīrì 星期日	Xīngqīyī 星期一	Xīngqī'èr 星期二	Xīngqīsān 星期三	Xīngqīsì 星期四	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Xīngqīliù 星期六
9:00 12:00	dǎ lánqiú 打篮球	kàn shū 看书		qù yīyuàn 去医院	gēn lǎoshī 跟老师 jiànmiàn 见面		gēn Mǎkè 跟马克 jiànmiàn 见面
12:00 3:00			xué 学 Zhōngwén 中文			xué 学 Zhōngwén 中文	
3:00 6:00		shàngbān 上班		kàn shū 看书	shàngbān 上班		qù Wáng Yù 去 王玉 de xīn jiā 的 新家
6:00 9:00	gēn Wáng Yù 跟 王玉 de gēge 的 哥哥 jiànmiàn 见面		gēn Mǎkè 跟 马克 qù chī 去吃 Zhōngcān 中餐			Shǐdīfū 史蒂夫 de shēngrì 的生日 pàiduì 派对	



3 Write your own weekly planner. Use the words below to help you.

zuò qǐng chī kàn qù xué dǎ
做、请、吃、看、去、学、打

Xīngqīrì	Xīngqīyī	Xīngqī'èr	Xīngqīsān	Xīngqīsì	Xīngqīwǔ	Xīngqīliù
星期日	星期一	星期二	星期三	星期四	星期五	星期六

Now work in pairs. Ask and say what you are going to do and when.

Nǐ Xīngqīyī zuò shénme
A: 你 星期一 做 什么?

Wǒ Xīngqīyī qù yīyuàn
B: 我 星期一 去 医院。

Language in use

Months and dates

1 Look at the months and dates.

Month		Day				
Number	月	Number	十	Number		号
yī	yuè			jiǔ	hào	9 January
一	月			九	号	
èr	yuè		shí	sì	hào	14 February
二	月		十	四	号	
wǔ	yuè	èr	shí	sān	hào	23 May
五	月	二	十	三	号	
liù	yuè	sān	shí		hào	30 June
六	月	三	十		号	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Chinese months and dates are all different, sharing no common characters.
- 2 Chinese months are formed by adding the character for "month" after the characters for 1 to 12.
- 3 Chinese dates are formed by adding the character for "date" after the characters for 1 to 31.
- 4 In Chinese, the days come before the months.

2 Write the dates in Chinese.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1 4 March | 4 1 October |
| 2 6 April | 5 7 November |
| 3 22 August | 6 31 December |

▶ Turn to page 166 for more information.



Sentences without verbs

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate
Jīntiān 今天 Today is Saturday.	Xīngqīliù 星期六。
Mǎkè 马克 Mark is 19 years old.	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。
Wǒ 我 I'm very happy.	hěn gāoxìng 很高兴。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 In the sentences above, all the predicates are nouns, or noun/adjective phrases.
- 2 Chinese sentences must always have a verb.
- 3 Verbs are not necessary for sentences stating age, dates, days of the week and time, etc.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- Xīngqīsì jīntiān
1 星期四 / 今天 /。
- Shí'èryuè èrshíwǔ hào jīntiān
2 十二月 / 二十五号 / 今天 /。
- èrshí suì Wáng Yù
3 二十岁 / 王玉 /。

▶ Turn to page 166 for grammar reference.

Making invitations using

qǐng
请

1 Underline the two verbs in each sentence.

- Wǒmen qǐng tā chī Zhōngcān
1 我们 请 她 吃 中餐。
- Mǎkè qǐng wǒ qù tā jiā
2 马克 请 我去 他家。
- Shǐdìfū qǐng Ānnà qù tā de shēngri pàiduì
3 史蒂夫 请 安娜 去 他的 生日 派对。

Now complete the table with the appropriate parts of the sentences.

	Person making invitation	Person receiving invitation	Event/Activity
1			
2		qǐng 请	
3			

2 Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 I invited her to have a meal.
- 2 Yeong-min invited us to his home.
- 3 Steve invited Wang Yu to his birthday party.

▶ Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

LESSON 3

Communication activity

1 Work in two groups.

Group A: Find out about the dates of holidays in mainland China.

Group B: Find out about the dates of holidays in Hong Kong.

2 Tell the other group about the dates of holidays from your research and make notes.

▶ Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

Use the following words to help you.

Yuándàn 元旦	New Year's Day	Zhōngqiūjié 中秋节	Mid-Autumn Festival
Chūnjié 春节	Spring Festival	Chóngyángjié 重阳节	Double Ninth Festival
Qīngmíngjié 清明节	Tomb Sweeping Festival	Fódànri 佛诞日	Buddha's Birthday
Láodòngjié 劳动节	Labour Day	Shèngdànjié 圣诞节	Christmas
Duānwǔjié 端午节	Dragon Boat Festival	Fùhuójié 复活节	Easter
Guóqìngjié 国庆节	National Day		

Cultural Corner

Lucky numbers in China

In Chinese culture, certain numbers are considered lucky (吉利) or unlucky (不吉利), based on the Chinese words which the pronunciations are similar to. For example, the number 9 (九) sounds like the word “long-lasting” (久), and is therefore considered a lucky number. The number 4 (四), on the contrary is considered an unlucky number because it sounds like the word “death” (死). In Chinese culture, the use of lucky numbers can be found everywhere: monetary gifts, phone numbers, street addresses, residence floors, vehicle licence plate numbers, and so on. The number 8 is the most frequently used lucky number, as it sounds similar to a word meaning “prosperity” or “wealth” (发).

Zhōngguó dàlù
中国 大陆 mainland China

jié rì 节日 Holidays	rì qī 日期 Dates
1	
2	
3	

Xiānggǎng
香港 Hong Kong

jié rì 节日 Holidays	rì qī 日期 Dates
1	
2	
3	

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
月	moon	月、期
扌	hand	打、握

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

朋 找 护 服

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|-------|---------------------|
| 1 星期 | a nurse |
| 2 月 | b make a phone call |
| 3 打电话 | c week |
| 4 护士 | d month |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

月 月 月 月 月

期 期 期 期 期 期 期 期

打 打 打 打 打

护 护 护 护 护 护

Review and practice

1 Circle the odd word out.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|
| shēngrì | jiǔ hào | jīntiān | Xīngqīrì |
| 1 生日 | 九号 | 今天 | 星期日 |
| rì | yuè | xīngqī | hàomǎ |
| 2 日 | 月 | 星期 | 号码 |
| chī | qù | kàn | jǐ |
| 3 吃 | 去 | 看 | 几 |
| pàiduì | yīyuàn | dàxué | jiā |
| 4 派对 | 医院 | 大学 | 家 |

2 Match the words with the days in English.

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| Xīngqīliù | a Thursday |
| 1 星期六 | b Friday |
| Xīngqīrì | c Sunday |
| 2 星期日 | d Tuesday |
| Xīngqī'èr | e Saturday |
| 3 星期二 | |
| Xīngqīwǔ | |
| 4 星期五 | |
| Xīngqīsì | |
| 5 星期四 | |

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

Xīngqīrì jīntiān chī qù
星期日 今天 吃 去

- Qīyuè shí hào
1 _____ 七月十号。
- Jīntiān Shíyīyuè èr rì
2 今天 十一月二日, _____。
- Lǎoshī qǐng wǒ tā jiā
3 老师 请我 _____ 她家。
- Ànnà qǐng Shìdīfū hé Mǎkè Zhōngcān
4 安娜 请 史蒂夫 和 马克 _____ 中餐。

4 Look at the pictures and write full sentences to describe the dates and days.



Vocabulary extension

Look at the ways to say days and dates.

qùnián 去年	jīnnián 今年	míngnián 明年
zuótiān 昨天	jīntiān 今天	míngtiān 明天
shàngge yuè 上个月	zhège yuè 这个月	xiàge yuè 下个月
shàngge xīngqī 上个星期	zhège xīngqī 这个星期	xiàge xīngqī 下个星期

Now complete the sentences.

- _____ wǒ jiǔsuì jīnnián wǒ shí suì
我九岁，今年我十岁，
_____ wǒ shíyī suì
我十一岁。
- Zuótiān Xīngqīliù _____ Xīngqīrì
昨天星期六，_____ 星期日，
_____ Xīngqīyī
_____ 星期一。
- Shàngge yuè shì Liùyuè _____ shì Qīyuè
上个月是六月，_____ 是七月，
_____ shì Bāyuè
_____ 是八月。

Vocabulary list

二月	Èryuè	<i>n.</i>	February	星期三	Xīngqīsān	<i>n.</i>	Wednesday
月	yuè	<i>n.</i>	month	星期四	Xīngqīsì	<i>n.</i>	Thursday
生日	shēngrì	<i>n.</i>	birthday	星期五	Xīngqīwǔ	<i>n.</i>	Friday
真的	zhēn de		really	星期六	Xīngqīliù	<i>n.</i>	Saturday
今天	jīntiān	<i>n.</i>	today	打	dǎ	<i>v.</i>	play (ball game with hands)
几	jǐ	<i>pron.</i>	how many	跟	gēn	<i>prep.</i>	with
星期天	Xīngqītiān	<i>n.</i>	Sunday (spoken)	见面	jiànmiàn	<i>v.</i>	meet up
星期	xīngqī	<i>n.</i>	week	看	kàn	<i>v.</i>	read, see
我们	wǒmen	<i>pron.</i>	we, us	书	shū	<i>n.</i>	book
吃饭	chīfàn	<i>v.</i>	have a meal	上班	shàngbān	<i>v.</i>	go to work
吃	chī	<i>v.</i>	eat	学	xué	<i>v.</i>	study, learn
去	qù	<i>v.</i>	go	派对	pàiduì	<i>n.</i>	party
厨房	chúfáng	<i>n.</i>	kitchen	一月	Yīyuè	<i>n.</i>	January
怎么样	zěnmeyàng	<i>pron.</i>	how about	五月	Wǔyuè	<i>n.</i>	May
那里	nàlǐ	<i>pron.</i>	there	七月	Qīyuè	<i>n.</i>	July
中餐	Zhōngcān	<i>n.</i>	Chinese food	九月	Jiǔyuè	<i>n.</i>	September
餐	cān	<i>n.</i>	cuisine, meal	去年	qùnián	<i>n.</i>	last year
好吃	hǎochī	<i>adj.</i>	tasty	今年	jīnnián	<i>n.</i>	this year
没问题	méi wèntí		no problem	明年	míngnián	<i>n.</i>	next year
六月	Liùyuè	<i>n.</i>	June	昨天	zuótiān	<i>n.</i>	yesterday
日	rì	<i>n.</i>	date (written)	明天	míngtiān	<i>n.</i>	tomorrow
星期日	Xīngqīrì	<i>n.</i>	Sunday (written)	上个	shàngge		last
星期一	Xīngqīyī	<i>n.</i>	Monday	这个	zhège	<i>pron.</i>	this
星期二	Xīngqī'èr	<i>n.</i>	Tuesday	下个	xiàge		next



UNIT

7

Bā diǎn jiàn
八点见!

See you at eight!

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the watches with the times.



a



b



c



d

bā diǎn sì diǎn shíyī diǎn liù diǎn
1 八点 2 四点 3 十一点 4 六点

Now listen and say the times.



2 Number the times in the order you hear them.



shí diǎn bàn

a 十点半



qī diǎn shíwǔ fēn

b 七点十五分



sān diǎn yī kè

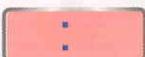
c 三点一刻



shí'èr diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn

d 十二点四十五分

3 Write the times in numbers or characters.



jiǔ diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn

a 九点二十五分



qī diǎn wǔshíjiǔ fēn

b 七点五十九分



c _____



d _____



4 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are making plans for the weekend.

Shǐdìfū Wáng Yù zhège zhōumò nǐ yǒu
史蒂夫: 王玉, 这个周末你有
shíjiān ma
时间吗?

Wáng Yù Xīngqītiān wǒ yào qù kàn yéye
王玉: 星期天我要去看爷爷。

Shǐdìfū Xīngqīliù nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà
史蒂夫: 星期六你有什么计划?

Wáng Yù Méiyǒu
王玉: 没有。

Shǐdìfū Wǒmen yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng
史蒂夫: 我们一起去看电影,
hǎo ma
好吗?

Wáng Yù Kàn shénme diànyǐng
王玉: 看什么电影?



LESSON 2

Shǐdìfū Zhōngguó diànyǐng Diànyǐng de míngzì
史蒂夫：中国 电影。电影 的 名字

jiào Jiā
叫《家》。

Wáng Yù Hǎo Jǐ diǎn
王玉：好。几点？

Shǐdìfū Diànyǐng bā diǎn bàn kāishǐ wǒmen
史蒂夫：电影 八 点 半 开始，我们
bā diǎn zài diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu jiàn
八 点 在 电影院 门口 见，
zěnmeyàng
怎么样？

Wáng Yù Tài hǎo le Wǒ qǐng wǒ de péngyou
王玉：太好了。我 请 我的 朋友
yìqǐ qù kěyǐ ma
一起 去，可以 吗？

Shǐdìfū Méi wèntí Míngtiān wǎnshàng bā diǎn jiàn
史蒂夫：没 问题。明天 晚上 八 点 见！

生词 New words

zhège 这个	this	diǎn 点	o'clock
zhōumò 周末	weekend	bàn 半	half (an hour)
yǒu 有	have	kāishǐ 开始	start
shíjiān 时间	time	diànyǐngyuàn 电影院	cinema
yào 要	want	ménkǒu 门口	entrance, doorway
yéye 爷爷	grandfather	jiàn 见	see, meet
jìhuà 计划	plan	tài 太	very, too
méiyǒu 没有	not have	le 了	particle
yìqǐ 一起	together	péngyou 朋友	friend
diànyǐng 电影	movie, film	míngtiān 明天	tomorrow
jǐ diǎn 几点	what time	wǎnshàng 晚上	evening



5 Listen again and answer the questions.

Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù zuò shénme
1 王玉星期六做什么？

Wáng Yù nǎ tiān qù kàn yéye
2 王玉哪天去看爷爷？

Shǐdìfū hé Wáng Yù kàn shénme diànyǐng
3 史蒂夫和王玉看什么电影？

Shǐdìfū hé Wáng Yù zài nǎlǐ jiànmiàn
4 史蒂夫和王玉在哪里见面？

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 4 using the days and times below.

Xīngqīyī
星期一 10:15

Xīngqīsì
星期四 8:15

Xīngqīsān
星期三 8:30

Xīngqīwǔ
星期五 9:30

Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "u" and "ü"

2-5

1 Listen and check the sounds you hear.

- | | u | ü |
|-----|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 去 | a <input type="checkbox"/> | b <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 女 | a <input type="checkbox"/> | b <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 不 | a <input type="checkbox"/> | b <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 住 | a <input type="checkbox"/> | b <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 语 | a <input type="checkbox"/> | b <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 书 | a <input type="checkbox"/> | b <input type="checkbox"/> |

Now listen again and mark the tones for the words.

2-6

2 Read the sentences aloud.

- Wǒ gēn Wáng Yù xué Yīngyǔ
1 我跟王玉学英语。
- Yú lǎoshī qù túshūguǎn jiè shū
2 于老师去图书馆借书。

Now listen and repeat.

2-7

3 Listen and say the words.

- | | | | |
|------|----------|---------|-----------|
| 1 几点 | jǐ diǎn | jīntiān | míngtiān |
| 2 一起 | yìqǐ | kěyǐ | zěnmeyàng |
| 3 电影 | diànyǐng | péngyou | ménkǒu |
| | | 朋友 | 门口 |

CHINESE TO GO

Confirming appointments

Míngtiān wǎnshàng bā diǎn jiàn
明天晚上八点见!
See you at eight tomorrow evening.

Yīyán-wéidìng
一言为定。 That's settled.

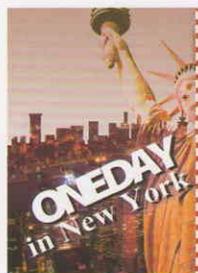
Bùjiàn-bùsàn
不见不散! Be there or be square!

4 Work in pairs. Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.

- Méi wèntí zài nǎlǐ jiàn
 a 没问题，在哪里见？
- Duìbuqǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng wǒ yào gōngzuò
 b 对不起，今天晚上我要工作。
- Míngtiān jiàn
 c 明天见！
- Kěyǐ jǐ diǎn
 d 可以！几点？
- Jīntiān wǎnshàng wǒmen yìqǐ qù kàn
 e 今天晚上我们一起去看电影，怎么样？
- Míngtiān wǎnshàng ne
 f 明天晚上呢？
- Diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu
 g 电影院门口。
- Bā diǎn zěnmeyàng
 h 八点怎么样？
- Hǎo míngtiān wǎnshàng bā diǎn jiàn
 i 好！明天晚上八点见！

Now act out the conversation.

5 Work in pairs. Make plans to see a movie.



Golden Cinema		
FILM:	One Day in New York	
PRICE:	¥60 (Adult)	
DATE	TIME	SEAT
6 Aug	8:30 pm	K04

Student A: Invite Student B to the cinema.

Student B: Say you are busy. Suggest another day and time.

Student A: Agree to Student B's suggestions. Suggest somewhere to meet him/her before the movie.

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



- 1 跑步 2 唱歌 3 吃饭 4 学英语

生词 New words

shì 事	thing, matter	chàngē 唱歌	sing a song
shàngwǔ 上午	morning	nǎinai 奶奶	grandmother
fēn 分	minute	dào 到	get to (a place), arrive
kè 刻	quarter (of an hour)	yùndòng 运动	sports
Yīngyǔ 英语	English	wǎnfàn 晚饭	dinner
zhōngwǔ 中午	noon	yīnyuè 音乐	music
cài 菜	food, dish	tīng 听	listen
xiàwǔ 下午	afternoon	yīnyuèhuì 音乐会	concert
pǎobù 跑步	jog	shēngrìkǎ 生日卡	birthday card
xiě 写	write	bókè 博客	blog
diànzǐ yóujiàn 电子邮件	email		



2 Read Wang Yu's weekend planner.

zhōumò jìhuà bù Xīngqīliù 周末计划簿 星期六

Weekend planner Xīngqīrì 星期日

yào zuò 要做	shàngwǔ 上午	8:45	xué Yīngyǔ 学英语
de shì 的事	zhōngwǔ 中午	12:30	gēn péngyou chī Riběncài 跟朋友吃日本菜
	xiàwǔ 下午	3:15	gēn gēge pǎobù 跟哥哥跑步
	wǎnshàng 晚上	8:00	gēn Shīdīfū kàn diànyǐng 跟史蒂夫看电影, zài diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu jiàn 在电影院门口见
bèiwànglù 备忘录	gěi Mǎkè xiě diànzǐ yóujiàn 给马克写电子邮件		

yào zuò 要做	shàngwǔ 上午	10:15	xué chàngē 学唱歌
de shì 的事	zhōngwǔ 中午	12:00	kàn yéye nǎinai 看爷爷奶奶
	xiàwǔ 下午	4:45	dào dàxué zuò yùndòng 到大学做运动
	wǎnshàng 晚上	6:00	zài jiā chī wǎnfàn 在家吃晚饭
		8:00	xué Yīngyǔ 学英语
bèiwànglù 备忘录	qǐng yīnyuè lǎoshī qù tīng yīnyuèhuì 请音乐老师去听音乐会; gěi Mǎkè xiě shēngrìkǎ xiě bókè 给马克写生日卡; 写博客		

3 Answer the questions.

- Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù shàngwǔ zuò shénme
1 王玉星期六上午做什么?
 Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù wǎnshang qù nǎli
2 王玉星期六晚上去哪里?
 Wáng Yù Xīngqītīān xiàwǔ zuò shénme
3 王玉星期天下午做什么?
 Wáng Yù zài nǎli zuò yùndòng?
4 王玉在哪里做运动?
 Wáng Yù nǎ tiān xiě bókè
5 王玉哪天写博客?

4 Write a weekend planner for yourself.

5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your weekend schedules in Activity 4.

- Nǐ Xīngqīliù yǒu shénme jìhuà?
 你星期六有什么计划?
 Nǐ zhōumò qù kàn diànyǐng ma?
 你周末去看电影吗?
 Zhège Xīngqītīān nǐ yào qù nǎli?
 这个星期天你要去哪里?

Language in use

Adverbial expressions of time

1 Look at the sentences.

Xīngqīliù 星期六	wǒ 我	bù gōngzuò 不工作。
wǒ 我	Xīngqīliù 星期六	bù gōngzuò 不工作。

I don't work on Saturdays.

Míngtiān 明天	Ānnà hé wǒ 安娜和我	qù kàn diànyǐng 去看电影。
Ānnà hé wǒ 安娜和我	míngtiān 明天	qù kàn diànyǐng 去看电影。

Tomorrow, Anna and I will go to see a movie.

Jīntiān wǎnshang 今天 晚上	wǒ 我	xué Yīngyǔ 学英语。
wǒ 我	jīntiān wǎnshang 今天 晚上	xué Yīngyǔ 学英语。

I will study English tonight.

Now check the two correct explanations.

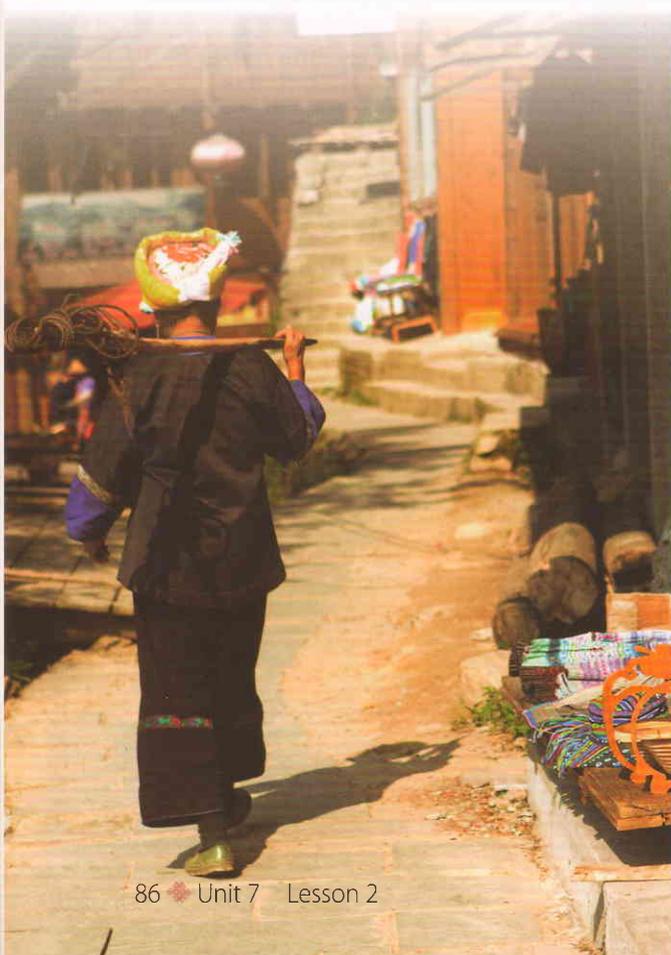
Adverbial expressions of time ...

- 1** can go before or after the subject.
 2 can go at the end of the sentence.
 3 do not need prepositions.

2 Put the words in brackets in the correct places in the sentences.

- Wáng Yù qù chī Zhōngcān míngtiān
1 王玉去吃中餐。(明天)
 Ānnà hé wǒ yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng
2 安娜和我一起去看电影。
 Xīngqīliù wǎnshang
 (星期六 晚上)
 Wǒ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì míngtiān xiàwǔ sì diǎn
3 我去听音乐会。(明天 下午四点)

▶ Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.



Different ways of telling the time

1 Look at the different ways of telling the time.

8:00 bā diǎn 八点	8:10 bā diǎn shí fēn 八点十分
8:15 bā diǎn shíwǔ fēn 八点十五分	8:30 bā diǎn sānshí fēn 八点三十分
bā diǎn yī kè 八点一刻	bā diǎn bàn 八点半
8:45	
bā diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn / bā diǎn sān kè 八点四十五分 / 八点三刻	
8:50 bā diǎn wǔshí fēn 八点五十分	9:00 jiǔ diǎn 九点

Now write two ways of telling each of these times.

5:15	12:30	7:45

2 Work in pairs. Use the appointment cards to act out the conversation.

Lǐ yīshēng 李医生 Appointment DATE 31 Jan TIME 4:15 pm	Sūn yīshēng 孙医生 Appointment DATE 1 Jul TIME 11:30 am	Zhāng yīshēng 张医生 Appointment DATE 15 Aug TIME 9:00 am
---	--	--

Nǐ jǐ yuè jǐ hào qù kàn yīshēng
你几月几号去看医生?

Jǐ diǎn
几点?

▶ Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

Expressing future tense with

yào
要

1 Look at the sentences.

Adverbial (Time)	Subject	Adverbial (Time)	Predicate		
			Modal verb	Verb	Complement / Object
Jīntiān 今天	wǒ 我		yào 要	qù 去	yīyuàn 医院。
	wǒ 我	Xīngqī sān 星期三	yào 要	xué 学	chànggē 唱歌。
Míngtiān 明天	bàba 爸爸		yào 要	qù 去	Běijīng 北京。
	Māma 妈妈	wǎnshàng 晚上	yào 要	gōngzuò 工作。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 要 in these sentences means "want to" or "be going to".
- 2 要 is used before another verb.
- 3 要 indicates an action in the past.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- kàn diànyǐng jiějie míngtiān yào
1 看电影 / 姐姐 / 明天 / 要。
- wǒ xīngqīliù qù shànghǎi yào
2 我 / 星期六 / 去 上海 / 要。
- jīntiān wǎnshàng xué Zhōngwén Mǎkè yào
3 今天 晚上 / 学 中文 / 马克 / 要。

▶ Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

LESSON 3

Communication activity

1 Work in groups.

You work in different regional offices of a marketing agency. You need to schedule a one-hour teleconference call with your colleagues, who all work in the same time zone as you.

First make a weekly schedule.

🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒🕒

Xīngqīrì 星期日	Xīngqīyī 星期一	Xīngqī'èr 星期二	Xīngqīsān 星期三	Xīngqīsì 星期四	Xīngqīwú 星期五	Xīngqīliù 星期六
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11

Now talk to each other and find a time that works for all of you. You need to:

- suggest times when you are available.
- give reasons if the time is not good for you.

A: Zhège Xīngqī _____ nǐ yǒu shíjiān ma
这个星期 _____ 你有时间吗?

B: Xīngqī _____ wǒ yào _____。
星期 _____ 我要 _____。

A: Xīngqī _____ ne
星期 _____ 呢?

B: Kěyǐ Jǐ diǎn?
可以。几点?

A: _____ diǎn zěnmeyàng?
_____ 点 怎么样?

B: Méi wèntí.
没问题。

2 Work with another group. Discuss and find a time that works for all of you.

Cultural Corner

Too late or too early?

The Chinese concept of time tends to be flexible. Chinese people do not adhere to timetables in a strict, sequential manner. Being on time is not very important and being late is not usually punished.

If someone of a very high position or rank is to attend a party, an unspoken rule of Chinese culture says they should be among the last to arrive as well as being among the first to leave.

▶ Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
门	gate	门、问
足	foot	跑、跟

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

闲 路 闭 跳

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|----------|------|------------|
| wèntí | 1 问题 | a jog |
| fángjiān | 2 房间 | b with |
| gēn | 3 跟 | c room |
| pǎobù | 4 跑步 | d question |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

问 间 跟 跑

Review and practice

1 Circle the odd word out.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| zhōngwǔ | jìhuà | wǎnshàng |
| 1 中午 | 计划 | 晚上 |
| chīfàn | pǎobù | dǎ lánqiú |
| 2 吃饭 | 跑步 | 打篮球 |
| kàn | fàn | tīng |
| 3 看 | 饭 | 听 |
| kàn diànyǐng | tīng yīnyuè | kāishǐ |
| 4 看电影 | 听音乐 | 开始 |

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- wǒ chī Zhōngcān yìqǐ gēn Wáng Yù
- 1 我 / 吃 / 中餐 / 一起 / 跟 / 王玉 / 。
- jǐdiǎn nǐ xué chànggē yào míngtiān
- 2 几点 / 你 / 学 唱歌 / 要 / 明天 / ?
- qù wǒ pǎobù bā diǎn
- 3 去 / 我 / 跑步 / 八点。
- wǒ wǎnshàng tīng yīnyuèhuì qù
- 4 我 / 晚上 / 听 音乐会 / 去 / 。

3 Write the times in characters.

- | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|
| 1 3:30 | 3 15:45 | 5 23:50 |
| 2 7:55 | 4 19:48 | 6 13:00 |

4 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

bā diǎn bàn	jǐ diǎn
八点半	几点
kàn diànyǐng	gēn
看电影	跟

Míngtiān nǐ yào zuò shénme

A: 明天 你要做什么?

Wǒ _____ māma qù tīng yīnyuèhuì Nǐ ne

B: 我 _____ 妈妈去听音乐会。你呢?

Wǒ gēn Shǐdīfū qù _____

A: 我跟史蒂夫去 _____。

Nǐmen míngtiān _____ jiàn

B: 你们明天 _____ 见?

Wǎnshàng _____

A: 晚上 _____。

Now work in pairs. Act out the conversation.

Vocabulary extension

Look at the activities.



yóuyǒng
游泳



mǎi dōngxi
买东西



kàn diànshì
看电视



kàn bǐsài
看比赛

Now work in pairs. Ask about and say the activities you like and what time you usually do them.

Wǒ xǐhuan yóuyǒng
A: 我 喜欢 游泳。

Wǒ zǎoshang qī diǎn yóuyǒng
我 早上 七 点 游泳。

Nǐ ne
你 呢?

Wǒ xǐhuan
B: 我 喜欢……

Vocabulary list

这个	zhège	pron.	this	分	fēn	n.	minute
周末	zhōumò	n.	weekend	刻	kè	n.	quarter (of an hour)
有	yǒu	v.	have	英语	Yīngyǔ	n.	English
时间	shíjiān	n.	time	中午	zhōngwǔ	n.	noon
要	yào	v.	want	菜	cài	n.	food, dish
爷爷	yéye	n.	grandfather	下午	xiàwǔ	n.	afternoon
计划	jìhuà	n.	plan	跑步	pǎobù	v.	jog
没有	méiyǒu	v.	not have	写	xiě	v.	write
一起	yīqǐ	adv.	together	电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujiàn	n.	email
电影	diànyǐng	n.	movie, film	唱歌	chànggē	v.	sing a song
几点	jǐ diǎn		what time	奶奶	nǎinai	n.	grandmother
点	diǎn	n.	o'clock	到	dào	v.	get to (a place), arrive
半	bàn	num.	half (an hour)	运动	yùndòng	n.	sports
开始	kāishǐ	v.	start	晚饭	wǎnfàn	n.	dinner
电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	n.	cinema	音乐	yīnyuè	n.	music
门口	ménkǒu	n.	entrance, doorway	听	tīng	v.	listen
见	jiàn	v.	see, meet	音乐会	yīnyuèhuì	n.	concert
太	tài	adv.	very, too	生日卡	shēngrìkǎ	n.	birthday card
了	le	particle		博客	bókè	n.	blog
朋友	péngyou	n.	friend	游泳	yóuyǒng	v.	swim
明天	míngtiān	n.	tomorrow	买	mǎi	v.	buy
晚上	wǎnshàng	n.	evening	东西	dōngxi	n.	thing
事	shì	n.	thing, matter	电视	diànshì	n.	television
上午	shàngwǔ	n.	morning	比赛	bǐsài	n.	competition, match

UNIT

8

Duōshao qián

多少钱?

How much is it?

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Number the colours in the order you hear them.



a 黑色
hēisè



b 绿色
lǜsè



c 红色
hóngsè



d 黄色
huángsè



e 白色
báisè



f 蓝色
lánsè

Now listen again and say the colours.



2 Number the clothes items in the order you hear them.



a 鞋
xié



d 毛衣
máoyī



b T恤
tīxù



e 裤子
kùzi



c 裙子
qúnzi



f 大衣
dàyī

Now listen again and say the clothes items.



3 Listen to the conversation.

Anna and Wang Yu are buying some clothes at a market.

Shòuhuòyuán Qǐngwèn nǐ yào mǎi shénme
售货员： 请问你要买什么
yīfu
衣服？

Ānnà Wǒ yào mǎi yī tiáo qúnzi
安娜： 我要买一条裙子。

Shòuhuòyuán Qǐng lái zhèbian
售货员： 请来这边……

Zhè tiáo zěnmeyàng
这条怎么样？

Ānnà Tài hóng le
安娜： 太红了！

Shòuhuòyuán Zhè tiáo kěyǐ ma
售货员： 这条可以吗？

Ānnà Wǒ bù xǐhuan lánsè
安娜： 我不喜欢蓝色。

Yǒu méiyǒu hēisè de
有没有黑色的？

Shòuhuòyuán Zhè tiáo hēisè de
售货员： 这条黑色的

zěnmeyàng
怎么样？



4 Listen again and check the true statements.

- 1 安娜要买红色的裙子。
 Ànnà yào mǎi hóngsè de qúnzi
 2 安娜喜欢蓝色。
 Ànnà xǐhuan lánse
 3 安娜买了一条黑色的裙子。
 Ànnà mǎile yī tiáo hēisè de qúnzi
 4 裙子的价钱是七十九块。
 Qúnzi de jiàqian shì qīshíjiǔ kuài
 5 裙子的价钱不贵。
 Qúnzi de jiàqian bù guì

5 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use different colours, clothes items and prices.

Ànnà Bù tài hǎokàn
 安娜： 不太好看！
 Shòuhuòyuán Shìshì zhè tiáo
 售货员： 试试这条。
 Ànnà Zhè tiáo bùcuò Duōshao qián
 安娜： 这条不错。 多少钱？
 Shòuhuòyuán Èr bǎi qīshíjiǔ kuài
 售货员： 二百七十九 块。
 Ànnà Piányi yīdiǎnr kěyǐ ma
 安娜： 便宜一点儿 可以吗？
 Shòuhuòyuán Duibuqǐ zhège jiàqian shì zuì
 售货员： 对不起，这个 价钱是最
 piányi de
 便宜的。
 Ànnà Wáng Yù zhège jiàqian guì ma
 安娜： 王玉，这个 价钱贵吗？
 Wáng Yù Bù guì Mǎi zhè tiáo ba
 王玉： 不贵。买这 条吧。
 Ànnà Hǎo gěi nǐ qián
 安娜： 好，给你 钱。
 Shòuhuòyuán Xièxie
 售货员： 谢谢。

生词 New words

shòuhuòyuán 售货员	shop assistant	shì 试	try
mǎi 买	buy	bùcuò 不错	not bad
yīfu 衣服	clothes	qián 钱	money
tiáo 条	measure word	bǎi 百	hundred
qúnzi 裙子	skirt	kuài 块	currency unit of China (yuan)
lái 来	come	piányi 便宜	cheap
zhèbian 这边	this way	yīdiǎnr 一点儿	a little
hóng 红	red	jiàqian 价钱	price
lánse 蓝色	blue	guì 贵	expensive
hēisè 黑色	black	ba 吧	particle for making suggestions
hǎokàn 好看	good-looking		

Pronunciation and speaking

The tones of

—



1 Look at the tone marks for —. How does the tone of — change?

yì tiān
一天

yì nián
一年

yì wǎn
一晚

yí kuài
一块

Now listen and say the words.



2 Listen and check the correct tones for —.

1 一种

a yīzhǒng b yìzhǒng

2 一起

a yìqǐ b yīqǐ

3 一双

a yìshuāng b yīshuāng



3 Listen and match the tones for —.

1 一件

a yī

2 一条

b yí

3 一个

c yǐ

4 一百

d yì

Now say the words aloud.



4 Listen and say the words.

1 买

来

shìshi
试试

2 便宜

bù guì
不贵

jiàqián
价钱

3 毛衣

kùzi
裤子

qúnzi
裙子

5 Work in pairs.

Student A: You are a customer in a clothes shop. You like a clothes item but it is too expensive.

Student B: You are a shop assistant. You agree to sell the item at a lower price.

Wǒ yào mǎi
A: 我要买……

Qǐng lái zhèbian Zhè tiáo zěnmeyàng
B: 请来这边。这条怎么样?

Bù cuò Duōshao qián
A: 不错。多少钱?

kuài
B: …… 块。

Tài guì le piányi yīdiǎnr
A: 太贵了, 便宜一点儿,

zěnmeyàng
…… 怎么样?

Hǎo ba
B: 好吧。

Gěi nǐ qián
A: 给你钱。

Xièxie
B: 谢谢。



CHINESE TO GO

Talking about shopping

Dǎzhé ma
打折吗?

Any discount?

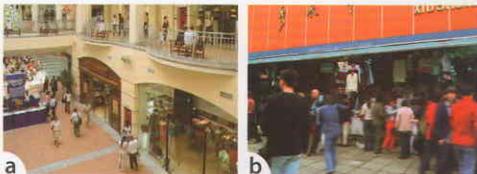
Suíbiàn kànkàn
随便看看。

Feel free to take a look.

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



- | | |
|-------------------|---------|
| fúzhuāng shìchǎng | chāoshì |
| 1 服装市场 | 3 超市 |
| gòuwù zhōngxīn | shūdiàn |
| 2 购物中心 | 4 书店 |

2 Read Steve's blog and answer the questions.

Shǐdīfū xǐhuan kàn shū ma
1 史蒂夫喜欢看书吗?

Shǐdīfū mǎide kùzi duōshao qián
2 史蒂夫买的裤子多少钱?

Tā shàngge yuè mǎile shénme
3 他上个月买了什么?

Xiǎoxiǎo shì shéi
4 小小是谁?

生词 New words

shūdiàn bookshop
书店
fúzhuāng shìchǎng clothes market
服装市场
yuǎn far away
远
kùzi trousers
裤子
tīxù T-shirt
T恤
báisè white
白色

yǒumíng famous
有名
gòuwù zhōngxīn shopping centre
购物中心
shàngge last
上个
zhèlǐ here
这里
shuāng pair
双
xié shoes
鞋

jiàn item, piece
件
dàyī coat
大衣
měi every, each
每
hěn duō a lot of
很多
chāoshì supermarket
超市
dōngxi thing
东西

Běijīng shēnghuó Beijing Life 北京生活

主页 博客 相册 档案 互动

发表文章

Qīyuè èr rì Xīngqīsi
七月二日 星期四



Zhè shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de Běijīng shūdiàn Wǒ
这是我最喜欢的北京书店。我
xǐhuan kàn shū
喜欢看书!

分享 | 评论 (06) | 阅读 (315) | 固定连接 | 发表于15:36



Zhè ge fúzhuāng shìchǎng hěn yuǎn dànshì jiàqián
这个服装市场很远，但是价钱
piányi Xīngqītiān wǒ mǎile yī tiáo kùzi
便宜。星期天我买了一条裤子，
èrshí kuài hěn piányi Wǒ gěi gēge mǎile
二十块，很便宜。我给哥哥买了
tīxù tā xǐhuan hēisè hé báisè de tīxù
T恤，他喜欢黑色和白色的T恤。

分享 | 评论 (16) | 阅读 (476) | 固定连接 | 发表于16:29



Zhè shì yǒumíng de gòuwù zhōngxīn Shàng-
这是有名的购物中心“Village”。上
ge yuè wǒ zài zhèlǐ mǎile yī shuāng xié hé yī jiàn
个月我在这里买了一双鞋和一件
dàyī Měi ge zhōumò zhèlǐ dōu yǒu hěn duō rén
大衣。每个周末这里都有很多人。

分享 | 评论 (37) | 阅读 (238) | 固定连接 | 发表于21:39



Zhè shì wǒ hé Xiǎoxiǎo Xiǎoxiǎo shì chāoshì de
这是我和小小。小小是超市的
shòuhuòyuán Měi ge Xīngqītiān zǎoshang wǒ dōu zài
售货员。每个星期天早上我都在
zhèlǐ mǎi dōngxi
这里买东西。

分享 | 评论 (11) | 阅读 (139) | 固定连接 | 发表于22:00

3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Shìdìfū _____ Běijīng de shūdiàn.
史蒂夫 _____ 北京的书店。
- 2 _____ hěn yuǎn.
_____ 很远。
- 3 Tā gěi gēge mǎile _____ hé
他给哥哥买了 _____ 和
_____ de tīxù
_____ 的T恤。
- 4 Měi gè zhōumò _____ dōu yǒu hěn duō rén.
每个周末 _____ 都有很多人。
- 5 Měi gè Xīngqītiān zǎoshang tā dōu zài
每个星期天 早上 他都在
_____ mǎi dōngxi.
_____ 买东西。

4 Read the list of clothes that Wang Yu has bought, and answer the questions.

Jiǔyuè yī rì 九月一日	dàiyī 大衣	¥ 500.00
Jiǔyuè wǔ rì 九月五日	máoyī 毛衣	¥ 160.00
Shíyīyuè qī rì 十一月七日	qúnzi 裙子	¥ 120.00
Shíyīyuè shí rì 十一月十日	tīxù T恤	¥ 38.00
Shí'èryuè shí'èr rì 十二月十二日	kùzi 裤子	¥ 135.00

- 1 Wáng Yù mǎi de dàiyī duōshao qián?
王玉买的大衣多少钱?
- 2 Wáng Yù Jiǔyuè wǔ rì mǎile shénme?
王玉九月五日买了什么?
- 3 Tā mǎi de qúnzi duōshao qián?
她买的裙子多少钱?
- 4 Wáng Yù Shí'èryuè shí'èr rì mǎile shénme?
王玉十二月十二日买了什么?

5 Write a blog about your own life.

Language in use

Measure words

1 Look at the examples for using measure words.

gè 个	jiàn 件	tiáo 条	shuāng 双
rén 人 people	máoyī 毛衣 sweater	qúnzi 裙子 skirt	wàzi 袜子 socks
píngguǒ 苹果 apple	tīxù T恤 T-shirt	lù 路 road	yǎnjīng 眼睛 eyes
xīngqī 星期 week	shì 事 thing	máojīn 毛巾 towel	shǒu 手 hands

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 个 is often used for clothing.
- 2 件 is usually used for people or objects.
- 3 条 is used for long and narrow objects.
- 4 双 is used for things that come in pairs.



2 Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

gè shuāng tiáo jiàn
个 双 条 件

- 1 yī péngyou sān dàiyī
一 朋友 三 大衣
- 2 yī kùzi yī xié
一 裤子 一 鞋

▶ Turn to page 168 for more information.

Numerals èr liǎng
二 / 两

1 Look at the phrases.

liǎng gè rén èrshíèr gè rén
两 个人 二十二个人

liǎng suì wǔshíèr suì
两 岁 五十二岁

liǎng tiān dì-èr tiān
两 天 第二天
the second day

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 两 is used for counting things.
- 2 二 can be used to mean second.
- 3 两 is used for expressing quantity.

2 Complete the phrases with 二 or 两.

- 1 jiàn yīfu dì gè rén
一 件衣服 第 个人
- 2 shí kuài qián shuāng xié
一 十块钱 一 双鞋
- 3 gè yuè shí gè xīngqī
一 个月 十 个星期

▶ Turn to page 168 for more information.

Expressing past tense using le 了

1 Look at the sentences.

Adverbial	Subject	Adverbial	Predicate		
			Verb	Particle	Object / Complement
Shàngge Xīngqītiān 上个星期天	wǒ 我		mǎi 买	le 了	liǎng jiàn yīfu 两件衣服。
	Tā 他		qù 去	le 了	Běijīng 北京。
	wǒ 我	zài Měiguó 在美国	zhù 住	le 了	sān nián 三年。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 了 is used after a verb.
- 2 了 is used to indicate the completion of an action.
- 3 了 is always used before a number.

2 Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 He has studied Chinese for three years.
- 2 She bought a pair of black shoes.
- 3 They went to Shanghai.

▶ Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in groups.

You are going to set up a website for a designer clothing store, targeting Chinese customers. Think about the following:

- the selection of clothes that you will sell online
- the prices of similar clothes in your local shops
- the prices in RMB
- name, telephone number, email and website of your online store
- date you plan to launch the online store

2 Make notes and rough designs for the pages of your online store.

3 Present the pages of your store to another group.

▶ Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

To bargain or not to bargain?

For westerners who are used to fixed prices, bargaining in China can be one of the hardest things to get used to. However, it is a good idea to bargain in China, as tourists are often offered an inflated price in markets, small shops, restaurants and sometimes even hotels.

Here are some bargaining tips if you are in China:

- Learn a few common Chinese phrases, such as “it’s too expensive” and “can you make it cheaper”?
- Take your time. Never buy anything at the first place you go to. Always shop around to compare prices.
- Decide how much you are willing to spend on an item before making an offer.
- If your offer is not accepted, try walking away. You will usually be called back for another round of negotiation if the shop is willing to sell.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
衤	clothes	裙
贝	shell	员

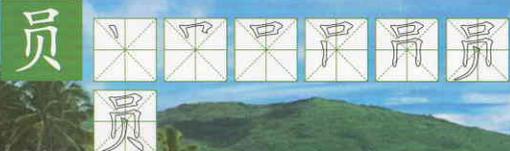
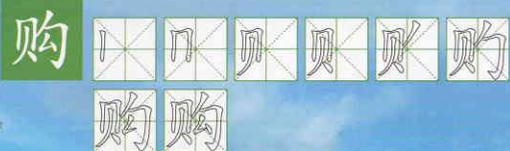
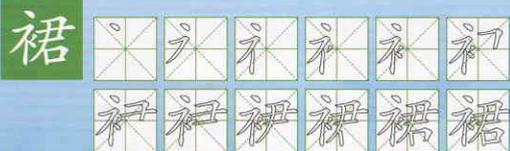
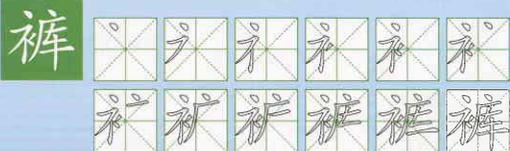
1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

衫 贵 衬 货

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|-------------|------------------|--|
| kùzi | | |
| 1 裤子 | a skirt | |
| qúnzi | | |
| 2 裙子 | b shopping | |
| gòuwù | | |
| 3 购物 | c shop assistant | |
| shòuhuòyuán | | |
| 4 售货员 | d trousers | |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



Review and practice

1 Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences.

Wǒ mǎi le yī jiàn hēi máoyī.
1 我买了一件黑毛衣。

Ānnà qù le Běijīng.
2 安娜去了北京。

Míngtiān shì Wáng Yù de shēngrì.
3 明天是王玉的生日。

Yǒngmín xǐhuan báisè.
4 永民喜欢白色。

2 Complete the passage with 二 and 两.

Èryuè shí rì wǒ hé gè
二月 十 日，我和 个
péngyou mǎi le jiàn yifu shuāngxié
朋友 买了 件衣服， 双鞋
hé shí zhāng shēngrìkǎ
和十 张生日卡。

3 Circle the odd word out.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|----------|------------|
| 1 hóngsè 红色 | lán sè 蓝色 | hēisè 黑色 | shūdiàn 书店 |
| 2 máoyī 毛衣 | tīxù T恤 | xié 鞋 | qúnzi 裙子 |
| 3 jiàn 件 | shuāng 双 | hóng 红 | tiáo 条 |
| 4 jiàqián 价钱 | bùguì 不贵 | kuài 块 | piányi 便宜 |
| 5 mǎi 买 | gěi 给 | shì 试 | hǎokàn 好看 |

4 Match the pictures with the words.



Vocabulary extension

Match the pictures with the words.



- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| wéijīn | chènshān |
| 1 围巾 | 4 衬衫 |
| duǎnkù | màozi |
| 2 短裤 | 5 帽子 |
| niúzáikù | liányīqún |
| 3 牛仔裤 | 6 连衣裙 |

Vocabulary list

售货员	shòuhuòyuán	<i>n.</i>	shop assistant	裤子	kùzi	<i>n.</i>	trousers
买	mǎi	<i>v.</i>	buy	T恤	tīxù	<i>n.</i>	T-shirt
衣服	yīfu	<i>n.</i>	clothes	白色	báisè	<i>n.</i>	white
条	tiáo	<i>measure word</i>		有名	yǒumíng	<i>adj.</i>	famous
裙子	qúnzi	<i>n.</i>	skirt	购物中心	gòuwù zhōngxīn	<i>n.</i>	shopping centre
来	lái	<i>v.</i>	come	上个	shàngge		last
这边	zhèbian	<i>pron.</i>	this way	这里	zhèli	<i>pron.</i>	here
红	hóng	<i>adj.</i>	red	双	shuāng	<i>measure word</i>	pair
蓝色	lánsè	<i>n.</i>	blue	鞋	xié	<i>n.</i>	shoes
黑色	hēisè	<i>n.</i>	black	件	jiàn	<i>measure word</i>	item, piece
好看	hǎokàn	<i>adj.</i>	good-looking	大衣	dàyi	<i>n.</i>	coat
试	shì	<i>v.</i>	try	每	měi	<i>pron.</i>	every, each
不错	bùcuò	<i>adj.</i>	not bad	很多	hěnduō		a lot of
钱	qián	<i>n.</i>	money	超市	chāoshì	<i>n.</i>	supermarket
百	bǎi	<i>num.</i>	hundred	东西	dōngxi	<i>n.</i>	thing
块	kuài	<i>measure word</i>	currency unit of China (<i>yuan</i>)	绿色	lǜsè	<i>n.</i>	green
便宜	piányi	<i>adj.</i>	cheap	黄色	huángsè	<i>n.</i>	yellow
一点儿	yīdiǎnr	<i>quantifier</i>	a little	毛衣	máoyī	<i>n.</i>	sweater
价钱	jiàqian	<i>n.</i>	price	围巾	wéijīn	<i>n.</i>	scarf
贵	guì	<i>adj.</i>	expensive	短裤	duǎnkù	<i>n.</i>	shorts
吧	ba	<i>particle</i>	(for making suggestions)	牛仔裤	niúzáikù	<i>n.</i>	jeans
书店	shūdiàn	<i>n.</i>	bookshop	衬衫	chènshān	<i>n.</i>	shirt
服装市场	fúzhuāng shìchǎng	<i>n.</i>	clothes market	帽子	màozi	<i>n.</i>	hat
远	yuǎn	<i>adj.</i>	far away	连衣裙	liányīqún	<i>n.</i>	one-piece dress

Review 2

Vocabulary

1 Complete the words with the characters in the box.

huà shǎo chī fú jiān dòng
话 少 吃 服 间 动

fáng yùn diàn
1 房 _____ 3 运 _____ 5 电 _____
yī hǎo duō
2 衣 _____ 4 好 _____ 6 多 _____

2 Match the words with the meanings.

hàomǎ 1 号码	a bookshop
dìzhǐ 2 地址	b thing
diànyǐng 3 电影	c address
shūdiàn 4 书店	d apartment building
dōngxi 5 东西	e number, code
gōngyù 6 公寓	f movie

3 Complete the email with the words in the box.

ménkǒu rì shēngrì diànyǐng
门口 日 生日 电影

未读邮件 ×

返回 回复 回复全部 转发 删除

Lǐ Lì
李丽:
Nǐ hǎo
你好!
Jiǔyuè shíbā zhège Xīngqīliù shì wǒ
九月十八____, 这个星期六是我
de wǒmen yìqǐ kàn zěnmeyàng
的____, 我们____一起看____, 怎么样?
Wǎnshàng qī diǎn Běijīngdiànyǐngyuàn
晚上 七点, 北京 电影院 ____
jiàn
见。

Zhāng Míng
张明

Grammar

1 Listen and complete the activities on Mark's to-do list for the day.

gēn lǎoshī <input type="checkbox"/> 1 跟 老师 _____	gēn Ānnà <input type="checkbox"/> 2 跟 安娜 _____	gēn lǎoshī <input type="checkbox"/> 4 _____ 中文	Zhōngwén yùndòng <input type="checkbox"/> 5 _____ 运动
shū <input type="checkbox"/> 3 _____ 书	chāoshì <input type="checkbox"/> 6 _____ 超市		

Now listen again and check the things that he has already done.

2 Match the measure words with the nouns.

gè 个	jiàn 件	tiáo 条	shuāng 双
píngguǒ 1 苹果	dàyī 6 大衣		
lù 2 路	kùzi 7 裤子		
qúnzi 3 裙子	xié 8 鞋		
péngyou 4 朋友	shì 9 事		
tīxù 5 T恤	xīngqī 10 星期		

3 Write the times in numbers or characters. Write two ways of saying the time where appropriate.

qī diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn
1 七点 二十五分
bā diǎn yī kè
2 八点 一刻
jiǔ diǎn bàn
3 九点 半
4 12:45
5 6:30
6 5:00

4 Circle the correct pinyin for —.

- 1 — (yī / yāo) 本书
běn shū
- 2 1 (yī / yāo) 78 号 房间
hào fángjiān
- 3 — (yī / yāo) 个 苹果
gè píngguǒ
- 4 电话 号码 是 78563491 (yī / yāo)
diànhuà hàomǎ shì
- 5 — (yī / yāo) 天
tiān
- 6 星期 — (yī / yāo)
Xīngqī

5 Look at Xiaoxiao's notes on the calendar and answer the questions.

Shí'èryuè shí'èr rì Xīngqī'èr
十二月十二日 星期二

jiějie de shēngrì
姐姐的生日

mǎi yīnyuè
买音乐 CD

qǐng tā kàn diànyǐng
请她看电影

- Jiějie de shēngrì shì nǎ tiān
- 1 姐姐的生日是哪天?
- Xiǎoxiǎo qǐng jiějie zuò shénme
- 2 小小请姐姐做什么?
- Xiǎoxiǎo yào mǎi shénme
- 3 小小要买什么?

6 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

jǐ	shuāng	èr	liǎng
几	双	二	两
fēn	nǎlǐ	ne	yě
分	哪里	呢	也

- Nǐ hǎo qǐngwèn xiànzài jǐ diǎn
- 1 A: 你好, 请问 现在几点?
- diǎn shíwǔ
- B: _____ 点十五 _____。

Wǒ shì Yīngguó rén nǐ shì _____ rén

2 A: 我是英国人, 你是 _____ 人?

Wǒ _____ shì Yīngguó rén

B: 我 _____ 是英国人。

Nǐ yǒu _____ gè jiějie

3 A: 你有 _____ 个姐姐?

Wǒ yǒu yī gè jiějie tā yǒu yī _____ dà yǎnjīng

B: 我有一个姐姐, 她有一 _____ 大眼睛。

Nǐ de shēngrì shì jǐ yuè

4 A: 你的生日是几月?

yuè Nǐ de shēngrì _____ ?

B: _____ 月。你的生日 _____ ?

Yě shì Èryuè

A: 也是二月。

Integrated skills

1 Listen and complete the passage.

Jīntiān shì _____ wǒ hé māma yìqǐ
今天 是 _____, 我和妈妈一起

qù mǎi yīfu Wǒ mǎile _____ Shàngge
去 买 衣服。我 买了 _____。上 个

Xīngqītiān bàba gěi wǒ mǎi le _____ dàn
星 期 天 爸 爸 给 我 买 了 _____, 但

shì wǒ xǐhuan Māma gěi bàba mǎi le _____
是 我 喜 欢 _____。妈 妈 给 爸 爸 买 了

_____ tā hěn xǐhuan
_____ , 他 很 喜 欢。

2 Listen and write the students' telephone numbers.

Běijīng Dàxué
北京 大学

xuéshēng xìngmíng	diànhuà hàomǎ
学 生 姓 名	电 话 号 码
Lǐ Bái 李 白	_____
Wáng Ān 王 安	_____
Liú Lì 刘 丽	_____

3 Complete the student record using your own information.

xìngmíng
姓名：

niánlíng
年龄：

diànhuà hàomǎ
电话号码：

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子邮箱：

dìzhǐ
地址：

guójí
国籍：

chūshēngdì
出生地：

4 Work in pairs.

Student A: Decide the colour and price for the following clothes items.



Student B: Decide the colour and price for the following clothes items.



Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other. Use the prompts below to help you.

Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénme míngzì

A: 请问，你叫什么名字？

Wǒ jiào

B: 我叫_____。

Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén

A: 你是哪国人？

Wǒ shì

B: 我是_____。

Nǐ duō dà

A: 你多大？

Wǒ

B: 我_____。

Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo

A: 你的电话号码是多少？

B: _____。

Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme

A: 你的电子邮箱是什么？

B: _____。

Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ

A: 你住在哪里？

Wǒ zhù zài

B: 我住在_____。

Now ask and answer questions about each other's clothes items, and complete the sales record.

rìqī 日期 (date)	dōngxi 东西 (item)	yánsè 颜色 (colour)	jiàqián 价钱 (price)
8月2号			

5 Complete the conversation using the sentences in the box.

- Běijīng diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu
a 北京 电影院 门口。
 Wǎnshàng qīdiǎn zěnmeyàng
b 晚上 七点, 怎么样?
 Qīyuè shí'èr hào
c 七月 十二号。
 Wǒ qǐng nǐmen kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng
d 我请 你们 看 电影, 怎么样?

Nǐ zhīdào Zhāng Hóng de shēngrì shì nǎ tiān ma
A: 你知道 张 红的生日是哪天吗?

B: _____

Míngtiān Zhēn de ma
A: 明天? 真的吗?

Shì wǒ gěi tā mǎi le yī tiáo wéijīn Nǐ ne
B: 是, 我给她买了一条围巾。你呢?

Wǒ bù zhīdào
A: 我不知道。_____

Tài hǎo le wǒmen míngtiān jǐ diǎn jiàn
B: 太好了, 我们 明天 几点 见?

A: _____

Hǎo zài nǎlǐ
B: 好, 在哪里?

A: _____

Hǎo míngtiān wǎnshàng bùjiàn-bùsàn
B: 好, 明天 晚上 不见不散!

Enjoy Chinese

Guess what these ancient Chinese characters resemble.

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------|
| 1 |  | shuǐ
a 水 |
| 2 |  | yáng
b 羊 |
| 3 |  | nǚ
c 女 |
| 4 |  | niú
d 牛 |
| 5 |  | mén
e 门 |

Now match the ancient characters with the modern ones.

UNIT
9

Bù yuǎn
不远!

It's not far!



LESSON 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the pictures with the words for places.



yóujú xǐshǒujiān fànguǎn yínháng
1 邮局 2 洗手间 3 饭馆 4 银行

Now listen and say the words.



2 Listen and complete the blanks with the words in the box.

dōngbian 东边 xībian 西边 nánbian 南边



生词 New words

nǎr 哪儿	where	lí 离	away from
lóu 楼	building, storey	zhèr 这儿	here
zěnmē 怎么	how	duì 对	right, correct
zǒu 走	walk, go	yínháng 银行	bank
lùrén 路人	passerby	fùjìn 附近	vicinity, nearby
yóujú 邮局	post office	qiánbian 前边	front
hòubian 后边	back	fēnzhōng 分钟	minute
wǎng 往	towards	zuǒyòu 左右	about
nánbian 南边	south		



3 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Yeong-min are asking for directions to Anna's house.

Shǐdīfū Ānnà zhù zài nǎr
史蒂夫：安娜住在哪儿？

Yǒngmín Gōngyuán Lù sānshísi hào lóu
永民：公园路 34 号楼。

Shǐdīfū Zěnmē zǒu
史蒂夫：怎么走？

Yǒngmín Wènwen lùrén ba
永民：问问路人吧！

.....

Yǒngmín Qǐngwèn zhè shì Gōngyuán Lù ma
永民：请问，这是公园路吗？

Lùrén Bù shì Gōngyuán Lù zài yóujú
路人：不是。公园路在邮局的后边。

Yǒngmín Wǒmen zěnmē zǒu
永民：我们怎么走？

Lùrén Wǎng nánbian zǒu
路人：往南边走。

Pronunciation and speaking

Retroflex "r"

2-26

1 Listen and check the words you hear.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a 这 | <input type="checkbox"/> b 这儿 |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a 哪 | <input type="checkbox"/> b 哪儿 |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a 一点 | <input type="checkbox"/> b 一点儿 |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a 一块 | <input type="checkbox"/> b 一块儿 |

Now listen again and say the words.

2-27

2 Read the sentences aloud.

- Zhèr yǒu yī gè gōngyuán.
这儿有一个公园。
- Wáng Yù zhù zài nǎr.
王玉住在哪儿?
- Chāoshì yǒu yīdiǎnr yuǎn.
超市有一点儿远。
- Wǒmen yīkuài kàn diànyǐng hǎo ma.
我们一块儿看电影，好吗?

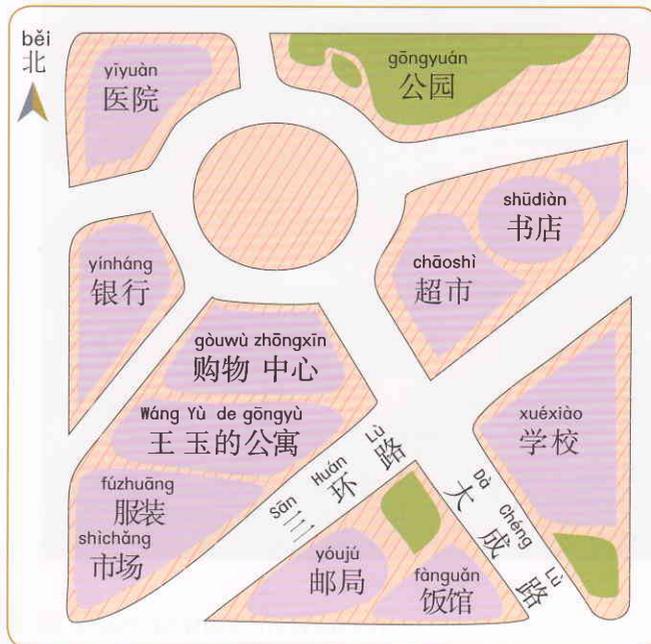
Now listen and repeat.

2-28

3 Listen and say the words.

- | | | | | | | | |
|------|----------|----|----------|----|--------|----|---------|
| 1 哪儿 | nǎr | 这儿 | zhèr | 怎么 | zěnmē | | |
| 2 南边 | nánbian | 东边 | dōngbian | 西边 | xībian | 北边 | běibian |
| 3 前边 | qiánbian | 后边 | hòubian | 附近 | fùjìn | | |

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about Wang Yu's neighbourhood. Use the prompts below to help you.



- Nǐ hǎo Qǐngwèn zài nǎr?
你好! 请问, …… 在哪儿?
- lí zhèr yuǎn ma?
…… 离这儿远吗?
- shì bù shì zài ……?
…… 是不是在……?

CHINESE TO GO

2-29

Asking and answering questions about places

Qǐngwèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu xǐshǒujiān?
请问, 附近有没有洗手间?
Excuse me, is there a toilet nearby?

Bùhǎoyisi wǒ bù zhīdào.
不好意思, 我不知道。
Sorry, I don't know.

Yǒu yīzhí wǎng qián zǒu.
有, 一直往前走。
Yes, go straight ahead.

Yǒu zài zuǒbian yòubian.
有, 在左边/右边。
Yes, on the left/right.

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



- gōngyù fángzi fángjiān sùshè
 1 公寓 2 房子 3 房间 4 宿舍

2 Read the advertisements and answer the questions.

Mark wants to rent a flat.

- Dàxué Lù de gōngyù yǒu duōshǎo gè fángjiān
大学路的公寓有多少个房间?
- Dàxué Lù de gōngyù de jiāotōng zěnmeyàng
大学路的公寓的交通怎么样?
- Nánjīng Lù de gōngyù yǒu duō dà
南京路的公寓有多大?
- Nánjīng Lù de gōngyù fùjìn yǒu shénme
南京路的公寓附近有什么?

生词 New words

chūzū 出租	rent out, lease	jiāotōng 交通	transportation
fángzi 房子	flat, house	fāngbiàn 方便	convenient
jìn 近	near	liánxì 联系	contact
dōngbian 东边	east	Nánjīng 南京	Nanjing
sùshè 宿舍	dormitory	píngfāngmǐ 平方米	square metre
xībian 西边	west	fànguǎn 饭馆	restaurant
dìtiězhàn 地铁站	subway station	xiānsheng 先生	Mr
běibian 北边	north		

本刊提醒在此刊登个人信息及使用本刊信息

6

房屋信息

100 房屋出租

1 公寓出租

Dàxué Lù shíbā hào èr lóu yǒu sān gè fángjiān
 大学路 18 号 2 楼, 有三个房间。
 Fángzi lí dàxué hěn jìn fángzi de dōngbian
 房子离大学很近。房子的东边
 yǒu xuésheng sùshè xībian yǒu dìtiězhàn
 有学生宿舍, 西边有地铁站,
 běibian yǒu chāoshì fùjìn yǒu diànyǐngyuàn
 北边有超市, 附近有电影院。
 Jiāotōng hé mǎi dōngxi dōu hěn fāngbiàn
 交通和买东西都很方便。
 měi yuè diànhuà
 每月 ¥4200 电话: 25489076
 Liánxìrén Zhào xiǎojiě
 联系人: 赵小姐

2 公寓出租

Hěn piányi
 很便宜!
 Nánjīng Lù jiùshíbā hào bā lóu yībǎi èrshí píngfāngmǐ
 南京路 98 号 8 楼, 120 平方米。
 Fùjìn yǒu hěnduō shūdiàn hé jiàqián piányi
 附近有很多书店和价钱便宜
 de fànguǎn dōngbian yǒu gōngyuán xībian
 的饭馆, 东边有公园, 西边
 yǒu gòuwù zhōngxīn
 有购物中心。
 měi yuè diànhuà
 每月 ¥3500 电话: 69812047
 Liánxìrén Mǎ xiānsheng
 联系人: 马先生





3 Work in pairs. Write notes about the two flats in Activity 2.

	gōngyù 公寓 1	gōngyù 公寓 2
fùjìn yǒu 附近有		
gòuwù 购物		
měi yuè 每月¥		

Now discuss which flat Mark should choose.

4 Match the sentences with the information in the box.

jiāotōng gòuwù yùndòng
a 交通 b 购物 c 运动

- Fángzi de běibian yǒu chāoshì
1 房子的北边有超市。
- Fángzi lí dàxué hěn jìn
2 房子离大学很近。
- Fángzi de xībian yǒu gōngyuán
3 房子的西边有公园。
- Fángzi de dōngbian yǒu shūdiàn
4 房子的东边有书店。
- Fángzi de nánbian yǒu dìtiězhàn
5 房子的南边有地铁站。

5 Write an advertisement describing your flat or house. Use the advertisements in Activity 2 to help you.

Wǒ jiā de dōngbian yǒu
我家的东边有……

Language in use

Expressing existence using **yǒu** 有

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject		Predicate	
Attribute	Location	Verb	Object / Noun phrase
Xuéxiào 学校	fùjìn 附近	yǒu 有	yī gè gōngyuán 一个公园。

There is a park near the school.

Yóujú de 邮局的	xībian 西边	méiyǒu 没有	dìtiězhàn 地铁站。
-----------------	--------------	--------------	-------------------

There isn't a subway station to the west of the post office.

Wǒ jiā 我家	fùjìn 附近	yǒu 有	chāoshì 超市。
--------------	-------------	----------	----------------

There is a supermarket near my home.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 有 means "there is/are".
- 2 The noun before 有 can only refer to people.
- 3 没有 means "there isn't/aren't".

2 Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 There is a bank near my home.
- 2 There is a supermarket to the north of the subway station.
- 3 There isn't a post office behind the cinema.

▶ Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.



Asking questions using

yǒu méiyǒu
有没有

1 Look at the conversations.

Fùjìn yǒu shūdiàn ma
A: 附近有书店吗?

Yǒu
B: 有。

Fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu gōngyuán
A: 附近有没有公园?

Yǒu
B: 有。

Qiánbian yǒu méiyǒu yínháng
A: 前边有没有银行?

Méiyǒu
B: 没有。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 有没有 is an alternative expression of 有……吗。
- 2 有没有 means "is there" or "isn't there" in questions.
- 3 有没有 can be used in statements.

2 Rewrite the questions using 有没有.

Qiánbian yǒu dìtiězhàn ma
1 前边有地铁站吗?

Chāoshì hòubian yǒu xǐshǒujiān ma
2 超市后边有洗手间吗?

Nǐ jiā fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma
3 你家附近有银行吗?

▶ Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

Expressing locations with the verb

zài
在

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Noun phrase
Dìtiězhàn 地铁站	zài 在	shūdiàn dōngbian 书店东边。
Tā 他	zài 在	xuéxiào 学校。
Wáng Yù 王玉	zài 在	gōngyuán 公园。

Now check the sentences in which 在 is used as a verb.

Wǒ bàba zài yīyuàn gōngzuò
1 a 我爸爸在医院工作。

Yóujú zài yīyuàn hòubian
 b 邮局在医院后边。

Xǐshǒujiān zài shūdiàn dōngbian
2 a 洗手间在书店东边。

Mǎkè zài Wáng Yù jiā chīfàn
 b 马克在王玉家吃饭。

2 Look at the sentences.

Yóujú de běibian yǒu yī gè gōngyuán
邮局的北边有一个公园。

Gōngyuán zài yóujú běibian
公园在邮局北边。

Now rewrite the sentences using 在.

Yínháng de hòubian yǒu yī gè chāoshì
1 银行的后边有一个超市。

Yóujú fùjìn yǒu yī gè diànyǐngyuàn
2 邮局附近有一个电影院。

▶ Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

LESSON 3

Communication activity

1 Work in pairs. Prepare a proposal for funding to design a new town centre for a developing region in western China. Think about:

- locations of the bank, post office, bus station, subway station, supermarket, park, etc.
- distance between these places
- places to the north/south/east/west and how they connect to the town centre

2 Prepare questions to ask other pairs about their plans.

Běibian Nánbian Dōngbian Xībian yǒu shénme
北边 / 南边 / 东边 / 西边 有什么？

Dìtiězhàn lí chāoshì yuǎn bù yuǎn
地铁站 离 超市 远 不远？

Yǒu méiyǒu gōngyuán
有 没有 公园？

Yínháng zài nǎli Zěnme qù
银行 在 哪里？ 怎么 去？

3 Present your plan to the class. Answer questions from your classmates, and vote for the best plan.

▶ Turn to pages 154 and 160 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

How far is really far?

Just as in the West, Chinese people often prefer to gauge distance in terms of how long it takes to get somewhere, rather than describing it in terms of metres, kilometres or miles. If you were to ask “How far is it from Beijing to Shanghai?” in China, people would generally not answer “About 1000 kilometres”. Instead, they would say, “Two hours by plane” or “About ten hours by train”. Because long-distance train journeys are very common in China, more than in most other countries, describing distance in terms of hours spent on the train is widely and easily understood.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
木	tree	楼、机
彳	step	往、行

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

样 很 林 德

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|------|----------------|
| 1 楼 | a bank |
| 2 手机 | b towards |
| 3 银行 | c building |
| 4 往 | d mobile phone |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

楼

一 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨

丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨

楼

机

一 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨

行

彳 彳 彳 彳 彳 彳

往

彳 彳 彳 彳 彳 彳

彳 往

Review and practice

1 Circle the odd word out.

- | | | | |
|----------|--------|----------|---------|
| dōngbian | xībian | běibian | zhèli |
| 1 东边 | 西边 | 北边 | 这里 |
| chāoshì | fùjìn | gōngyuán | yínháng |
| 2 超市 | 附近 | 公园 | 银行 |

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- yǒu yínháng méiyǒu fùjìn
- 1 有 / 银行 / 没有 / 附近 / ?
- nánbian dìtiězhàn gōngyuán yī gè yǒu de
- 2 南边 / 地铁站 / 公园 / 一个 / 有 / 的 / 。
- de yóujú yínháng běibian zài
- 3 的 / 邮局 / 银行 / 北边 / 在 / 。
- chāoshì méiyǒu qiánbian
- 4 超市 / 没有 / 前边 / 。

3 Match the questions with the answers.

- Chāoshì lí yīyuàn yuǎn ma
- 1 超市离医院远吗?
- Yóujú zài nǎli
- 2 邮局在哪里?
- Dàxué fùjìn yǒu shūdiàn ma
- 3 大学附近有书店吗?
- zhèli de jiāotōng fāngbiàn ma
- 4 这里的交通方便吗?

- Yǒu zài qiánbian
- a 有, 在前边。
- Fùjìn yǒu dìtiězhàn hěn fāngbiàn
- b 附近有地铁站, 很方便。
- Bù yuǎn
- c 不远。
- Yóujú zài shūdiàn de běibian
- d 邮局在书店的北边。

4 Write sentences with 在 and 有 / 没有 using the words in the boxes.

shūdiàn yóujú
书店 邮局

gōngyuán chāoshì
公园 超市

dìtiězhàn yínháng
地铁站 银行

dōngbian xībian
东边 西边

nánbian běibian
南边 北边

qiánbian hòubian
前边 后边

Wǒ jiā de dōngbian yǒu yī gè chāoshì.
我家的东边有一个超市。

Chāoshì zài wǒ jiā de dōngbian.
超市在我家的东边。

Vocabulary extension

Draw a map of your neighbourhood. Use the places you have learnt in this unit and the places below.

shāngdiàn 商店 shop	jǐngchájú 警察局 police station
kāfēidiàn 咖啡店 café	lǚguǎn 旅馆 hotel
yàodiàn 药店 pharmacy	jiànshēnfáng 健身房 gymnasium

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your maps.

Nǐ jiā fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu _____?
A: 你家附近有没有_____?

Méiyǒu / Yǒu zài _____。
B: 没有。/ 有，在_____。

Vocabulary list

哪儿	nǎr	pron.	where	东边	dōngbian	n.	east
楼	lóu	n.	building, storey	宿舍	sùshè	n.	dormitory
怎么	zěnmē	pron.	how	西边	xībian	n.	west
走	zǒu	v.	walk, go	地铁站	dìtiězhàn	n.	subway station
路人	lùrén	n.	passerby	北边	běibian	n.	north
邮局	yóujú	n.	post office	交通	jiāotōng	n.	transportation
后边	hòubian	n.	back	方便	fāngbiàn	adj.	convenient
往	wǎng	prep.	towards	联系	liánxì	v./n.	contact
南边	nánbian	n.	south	南京	Nánjīng	n.	Nanjing
离	lí	v.	away from	平方米	píngfāngmǐ	measure word	square metre
这儿	zhèr	pron.	here	饭馆	fànguǎn	n.	restaurant
对	duì	adj.	right, correct	先生	xiānsheng	n.	Mr.
银行	yínháng	n.	bank	洗手间	xǐshǒujiān	n.	toilet, washroom
附近	fùjìn	n./adj.	vicinity, nearby	商店	shāngdiàn	n.	shop
前边	qiánbian	n.	front	咖啡店	kāfēidiàn	n.	café
分钟	fēnzhōng	n.	minute	药店	yàodiàn	n.	pharmacy
左右	zuǒyòu	n.	about	警察局	jǐngchájú	n.	police station
出租	chūzū	v.	rent out, lease	旅馆	lǚguǎn	n.	hotel
房子	fángzi	n.	flat, house	健身房	jiànshēnfáng	n.	gymnasium
近	jìn	adj.	near				

UNIT 10

Zuò huǒchē ba
坐火车吧。

Let's take the train.

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the pictures with the words for means of transport.



a



b



c



d



e



f

- zuò gōnggòng qìchē
1 坐公共汽车
- qí zìxíngchē
2 骑自行车
- zuò chūzūchē
3 坐出租车

- zuò dìtiě
4 坐地铁
- zuò huǒchē
5 坐火车
- zuò fēijī
6 坐飞机

Now listen and say the words.

2 Work in pairs. Tell each other what means of transport you would take to these places.

- Běijīng
1 北京
- xuéxiào
2 学校

- péngyou de jiā
3 朋友的家
- gòuwù zhōngxīn
4 购物中心



3 Listen to the conversation.

Yeong-min and Steve are making plans to go shopping at the weekend.

Yǒngmín Shǐdīfū nǐ de tìxù zài nǎlǐ
永民：史蒂夫，你的T恤在哪里

mǎi de Bù tài hǎokàn
买的？不太好看！

Shǐdīfū Shì ma Zhè shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de
史蒂夫：是吗？这是我最喜欢的

tìxù wǒ hěn xǐhuan tā de yánsè
T恤，我很喜欢它的颜色。

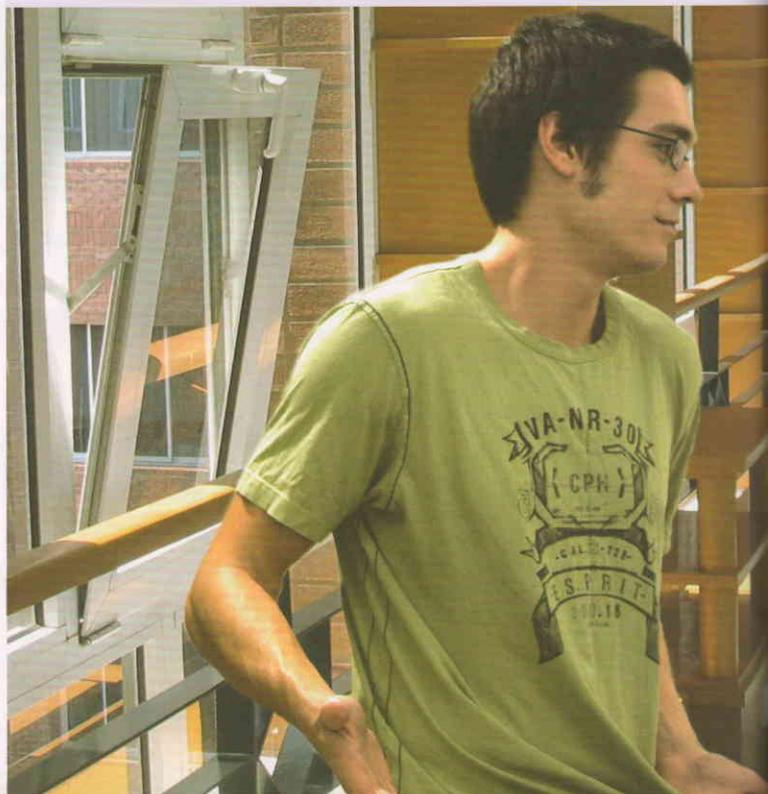
Yǒngmín Nǐ xūyào yìxiē xīn yīfú
永民：你需要一些新衣服。

Wǒmen yìqǐ qù gòuwù zhōngxīn
我们一起去购物中心
mǎi ba
买吧。

Shǐdīfū Shì bù shì zài sānlǐtún
史蒂夫：是不是在三里屯？

Yǒngmín Shì
永民：是。

Shǐdīfū Zěnmé qù Zuò gōnggòng qìchē
史蒂夫：怎么去？坐公共汽车
háishi zuò chūzūchē
还是坐出租车？



LESSON 2

Yǒngmín Zuò dìtiě ba dìtiě fāngbiàn yīdiǎnr
永民：坐地铁吧，地铁方便一点儿。

Shǐdìfū Hǎo
史蒂夫：好。

Yǒngmín Xīngqīliù háishi Xīngqītiān qù
永民：星期六还是星期天去？

Shǐdìfū Xīngqīliù ba
史蒂夫：星期六吧。

Yǒngmín Hǎo Ránhòu wǒmen qù chī wǎnfàn
永民：好。然后我们去吃晚饭，
hǎo ma
好吗？

Shǐdìfū Dāngrán hǎo Nàlǐ yǒu shénme fànguǎn
史蒂夫：当然好！那里有什么饭馆？

Yǒngmín Nàlǐ yǒu Yìdàlì cāntīng yě yǒu
永民：那里有意大利餐厅，也有
Rìběn cāntīng
日本餐厅。

Shǐdìfū Wǒmen chī Yìdàlìcài ba
史蒂夫：我们吃意大利菜吧。

Yǒngmín Hǎo Wǒ zuì xǐhuan chī Yìdàlìcài
永民：好。我最喜欢吃意大利菜！

生词 New words

tā	它	it	háishi	还是	or (in a question)
yánsè	颜色	colour	chūzūchē	出租车	taxi
xūyào	需要	need	ránhòu	然后	then
yìxiē	一些	some	dāngrán	当然	of course
Sānlǐtún	三里屯	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	Yìdàlì	意大利	Italy
zuò	坐	take (a vehicle)	cāntīng	餐厅	restaurant
gōnggòng	公共	qìchē			bus

2-32

4 Listen again and answer the questions.

- Shǐdìfū de tīxù hǎokàn ma
1 史蒂夫的T恤好看吗？
- Xīngqīliù Yǒngmín hé Shǐdìfū qù nǎlǐ
2 星期六永民和史蒂夫去哪里？
- Tāmen qù mǎi shénme
3 他们去买什么？
- Tāmen zěnme qù
4 他们怎么去？
- Yǒngmín zuì xǐhuan chī shénme
5 永民最喜欢吃什么？

5 Complete Steve's notes about the shopping trip.

Hé Yǒngmín yìqǐ gòuwù
和永民一起购物

dìfang
地方(place):

shíjiān
时间:

jiāotōng
交通:

wǎnfàn
晚饭:

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using different places and means of transport.



Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "q" and "ch"

1 Say the words aloud.

q		ch	
qī 七	qù 去	chī 吃	chē 车
qǐng 请	qún 裙	chàng 唱	chū 出

Now listen and repeat.

2 Say the tongue twister.

Chuān le qúnzi zuò chūzūchē qù chī qīngcài
穿了裙子坐出租车去吃青菜!

Now listen and repeat.

3 Write answers to the questions.

Nǐ qù nǎlǐ
1 你去哪里?

Nǐ zuò shénme chē qù
2 你坐什么车去?

Now work in pairs and say the conversations.

4 Listen and say the words.

- | | | |
|-------|--------------|------------------------|
| 1 在 | zuò
坐 | zuì
最 |
| 2 怎么 | háishi
还是 | dāngrán
当然 |
| 3 出租车 | dìtiě
地铁 | gōnggòng qìchē
公共汽车 |

5 Work in pairs. You are going shopping downtown.

Choose the best way to get there.

Wǒmen _____ qù háishi _____ qù?
A: 我们 _____ 去还是 _____ 去?

Wǒmen _____ qù.
B: 我们 _____ 去。

Wǒmen _____ qù hǎo ma
A: 我们 _____ 去, 好吗?

Hǎo ba. Bù wǒmen _____ qù.
B: 好吧。/ 不, 我们 _____ 去。

6 Work in groups. Find out how your group members go to various places and complete the table.

- Nǐ zěnmē qù xuéxiào
A: 你怎么去学校?
Wǒ zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù
B: 我坐公共汽车去。
Nǐ zuò gōnggòng qìchē háishi zuò dìtiě
A: 你坐公共汽车还是坐地铁
qù shàngbān?
去上班?
Wǒ zuò dìtiě qù
B: 我坐地铁去。

	Student 1	Student 2	Student 3
xuéxiào 学校			
gōngzuò 工作			
yīyuàn 医院			
chāoshì 超市			

CHINESE TO GO

Saying goodbye to people going on a journey

Yīlù-shùnfēng
一路顺风!

Have a good trip!

Zhùyì ānquán
注意安全!

Safety first!

Zhù nǐ yīlù-píng'ān
祝你一路平安。

Have a safe trip.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Check the activities you like to do during the holidays.



a zuò chuán yóulǎn
 坐船游览



b páshān
 爬山



c lǚxíng
 旅行



d pāizhào
 拍照

2 Read Anna and Wang Yu's plan for a trip.

lǚxíng shíjiān shǔjià jiàqī de dì-yī
旅行时间：暑假（假期的第一
gè xīngqī
个星期）

qù nǎlǐ Guìlín
去哪里：桂林

zěnme qù zuò huǒchē fāngbiàn piányi
怎么去：坐火车（方便、便宜）

yào qǐng de rén Shǐdīfū hé Mǎkè
要请的人：史蒂夫和马克

zuò shénme zuò chuán yóulǎn gòuwù
做什么：坐船游览、购物、

páshān pāizhào cānguān
爬山、拍照、参观

yǒumíng de jǐngdiǎn
有名的景点

Now answer the questions.

Ānnà hé Wáng Yù qù nǎlǐ lǚxíng
1 安娜和王玉去哪里旅行？

Tāmen zěnme qù
2 她们怎么去？

Tāmen gēn shéi yìqǐ qù
3 她们跟谁一起去？

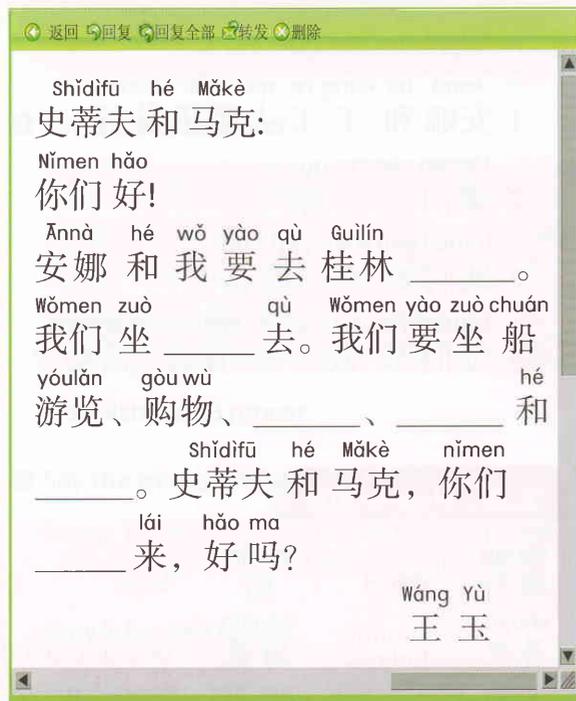
Tāmen yào zuò yīxiē shénme huódòng
4 她们要做什么活动？

生词 New words

lǚxíng 旅行	travel	chuán 船	boat
shǔjià 暑假	summer holiday	yóulǎn 游览	go sightseeing
jiàqī 假期	holiday	páshān 爬山	climb a mountain
dì-yī gè 第一个	the first	pāizhào 拍照	take photos
Guìlín 桂林	Guilin	cānguān 参观	visit (a place)
huǒchē 火车	train	jǐngdiǎn 景点	scenic site



3 Complete Wang Yu's email to Steve and Mark.
Wang Yu is inviting Steve and Mark on the trip.



4 Write the means of transport Anna and Wang Yu should take from their hotel in Guilin to do the following activities.



- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 páshān
爬山 | bāshí gōnglǐ
80 公里 (km) |
| 2 zuò chuán yóulǎn
坐船游览 | shíliù gōnglǐ
16 公里 |
| 3 qù gòuwù zhōngxīn
去购物中心 | yī gōnglǐ
1 公里 |
| 4 qù yǒumíng de fànguǎn
去有名的饭馆 | wǔ gōnglǐ
5 公里 |

Language in use

Alternative questions
with

háishi
还是

1 Look at the conversations.

Nǐ jiào Shǐdīfū háishi Mǎkè
A: 你叫史蒂夫还是马克?

Wǒ jiào Shǐdīfū
B: 我叫史蒂夫。

Tā shì nǐ jiějie háishi nǐ mèimei
A: 她是你姐姐还是你妹妹?

Wǒ mèimei
B: 我妹妹。

Wǒmen zuò chūzūchē háishi dìtiě
A: 我们坐出租车还是地铁?

Zuò dìtiě ba
B: 坐地铁吧。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 还是 is used to join two alternatives in questions.
- 2 还是 means "and".
- 3 When the same verb is used before and after 还是, the second verb can be left out.

2 Complete the sentences using 还是 and the phrases in brackets.

Nǐ shì _____ Zhōngguó rén Riběnrén
1 你是 _____ (中国人 / 日本人) ?

Tā zuò _____ gōnggòng qìchē dìtiě
2 她坐 _____ (公共汽车 / 地铁) ?

Wǒmen _____ kàn diànyǐng tīng yīnyuè
3 我们 _____ (看电影 / 听音乐) ?

Jīntiān shì _____ wǔ hào liù hào
4 今天是 _____ (五号 / 六号) ?

▶ Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

Questions ending with **hǎo ma 好吗**

1 Look at the conversation.

Wǒmen qù gòuwù hǎo ma
A: 我们去购物, 好吗?

Hǎo qù nǎlǐ
B: 好, 去哪里?

Wǒmen qù sānlǐtún hǎo ma
A: 我们去三里屯, 好吗?

Hǎo
B: 好。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 好吗 can be used at the end of a sentence to make a suggestion.
 - 2 好吗 can be used at the end of a sentence to ask for an opinion.
 - 3 We use 好吗 to respond to suggestions.
- 2 Check the sentences that can have 好吗 added at the end to make questions.

Jiǔ hào shì wǒ bàba de shēngrì
 1 九号是我爸爸的生日。

Wǒmen Xīngqīliù qù
 2 我们星期六去。

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě
 3 我们坐地铁。

Expressing superlatives with

zuì 最

1 Look at the phrases.

zuì xǐhuan zuì hǎo
最喜欢 like the most 最好 the best

zuì piàoliang
最漂亮 the most beautiful

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 最 is used to express superlatives.
- 2 最 can be used before a verb or an adjective.
- 3 最 can be used both before and after the verb or adjective.

2 Write a sentence about yourself using 最.

▶ Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

Using the particle **ba 吧**

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒmen zuò huǒchē qù ba
我们坐火车去吧。 Let's take the train.

Zǒu ba
走吧。 Let's go.

Shǐdīfū nǐ lái ba
史蒂夫, 你来吧。 Steve, you come.

Nǐmen zuò fēijī lái ba
你们坐飞机来吧。 You could come here by air.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 吧 can be used to indicate commands or suggestions.
 - 2 吧 is used to ask for opinions.
 - 3 吧 is used at the end of a sentence.
- 2 Complete the conversations using 吧 and the words in brackets.

Wǒmen zěnmē qù gòuwù zhōngxīn
1 A: 我们怎么去购物中心?

B: _____。 (公共汽车)

Wǒmen jǐdiǎn qù chāoshì
2 A: 我们几点去超市?

B: _____。 (现在)

3 A: _____。 (一起, 银行)

Duìbuqǐ wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān nǐ qù ba
B: 对不起, 我没有时间, 你去吧。

▶ Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work alone.

You work as a volunteer on a project called “Experiencing China”. The project organizes trips for students in your local area. Choose one of the four places below and plan a trip. Include:

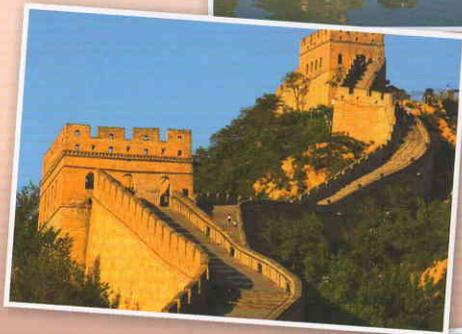
- the dates for the trip
- one place to go
- the activities for the tour



Shànghǎi
上海

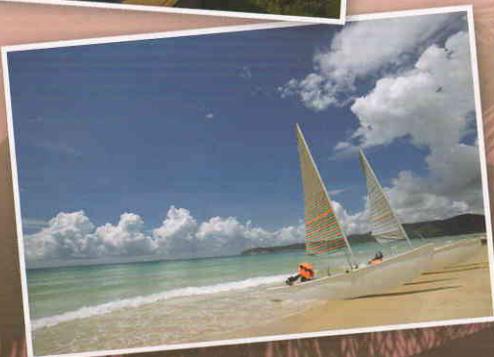


Guìlín
桂林



Běijīng
北京

Sānyà
三亚



2 Work in groups. Talk about the different choices you thought about in Activity 1. Make suggestions using **好吗** and **吧**.

Shǔjià qù Zhōngguó hǎo ma

A: 暑假去中国, 好吗?

Hǎo qù nǎlǐ

B: 好, 去哪里?

Qù Shànghǎi hǎo ma

A: 去上海, 好吗?

Háishì qù Guìlín ba Nàlǐ yǒu hěn duō jǐngdiǎn

B: 还是去桂林吧。那里有很多景点。

3 Tell the class about your plan for the trip.

▶ Turn to pages 154 and 160 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

China—a kingdom of bicycles

China is known to many as the “kingdom of bicycles”. With its 10 million bicycles, Beijing has the largest number of bicycles of any city in the world. In a city with over 13 million people, 2.4 million can be found riding their bicycles to work every day. During rush hour, the roads teem with thousands of bikes, and car drivers need to be skilful at navigating their way through the congested roads.

For many Chinese people, especially those living in rural areas, bicycles are their main means of transport. This contrasts with Western countries where bike riding is often a form of physical exercise rather than a vital or sole means of transport.

In cities all over China, parking areas for bicycles can be seen everywhere on the streets. And as times change, electric bikes are becoming more popular too.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
又	again	观、对
饣	eat	饭、馆

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

发 饮 友 饥

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|---------|------|------------------|
| xǐhuan | 1 喜欢 | a restaurant |
| duì | 2 对 | b like |
| cānguān | 3 参观 | c right, correct |
| fànguǎn | 4 饭馆 | d visit |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

欢 ㄩ ㄩ ㄩ ㄩ ㄩ ㄩ 欢

对 ㄩ ㄩ ㄩ 对 对

饭 饣 饣 饣 饣 饣 饭
饭

馆 饣 饣 饣 饣 饣 馆
馆 馆 馆 馆 馆

Review and practice

1 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | | |
|--------|------|--------------------|
| páshān | 1 爬山 | a together |
| yìqǐ | 2 一起 | b cheap |
| lǚxíng | 3 旅行 | c climb a mountain |
| piányi | 4 便宜 | d travel |

2 Complete the sentences with the words from Activity 1.

- Zuótiān wǒ hé péngyou _____ qù yóuyǒng
1 昨天我和朋友 _____ 去游泳。
- Zhè jiàn yīfu èrshíwǔ kuài hěn _____
2 这件衣服 25 块, 很 _____。
- Míngtiān wǒmen qù _____ hǎo ma
3 明天我们去 _____, 好吗?
- Nǐ qù Běijīng _____ ma
4 你去北京 _____ 吗?

3 Choose the best sentence to complete the conversations.

Wáng Yù

1 王玉: _____

Mǎkè Hǎo
马克: 好。

Wǒmen bā diǎn qù hǎo ma

a 我们八点去, 好吗?

Wǒmen bā diǎn qù háishi jiǔ diǎn qù

b 我们八点去还是九点去?

Wáng Yù

2 王玉: _____

Mǎkè Wǒ dìdì
马克: 我弟弟。

Tā shì nǐ dìdì ma

a 他是你弟弟吗?

Tā shì nǐ gēge háishi nǐ dìdì
b 他是你哥哥还是你弟弟?

Wáng Yù Wǒmen qù nǎlǐ chīfàn
3 王玉: 我们去哪里吃饭?

Mǎkè _____
马克: _____

Wǒmen qù Zhōngcānguǎn ba
a 我们去 中餐馆 吧。

Wǒmen qù chīfàn ba
b 我们去吃饭吧。

Vocabulary extension

Look at the words in the box.

jiāyóuzhàn 加油站	petrol station	tíngchēchǎng 停车场	car park
huǒchēzhàn 火车站	railway station	fēijīchǎng 飞机场	airport

Now write the words under the appropriate signs.



Vocabulary list

它	tā	<i>pron.</i>	it	第一个	dì-yī gè		the first
颜色	yánsè	<i>n.</i>	colour	桂林	Guilín	<i>n.</i>	Guilin
需要	xūyào	<i>v.</i>	need	火车	huǒchē	<i>n.</i>	train
一些	yīxiē	<i>quantifier</i>	some	船	chuán	<i>n.</i>	boat
三里屯	Sānlǐtún	<i>n.</i>	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	游览	yóulǎn	<i>v.</i>	go sightseeing
坐	zuò	<i>v.</i>	take (a vehicle)	爬山	páshān	<i>v.</i>	climb a mountain
公共汽车	gōnggòng qìchē	<i>n.</i>	bus	拍照	pāizhào	<i>v.</i>	take photos
还是	háishi	<i>conj.</i>	or (in a question)	参观	cānguān	<i>v.</i>	visit (a place)
出租车	chūzūchē	<i>n.</i>	taxi	景点	jǐngdiǎn	<i>n.</i>	scenic site
然后	ránhòu	<i>conj.</i>	then	骑	qí	<i>v.</i>	ride (bicycle, etc)
当然	dāngrán	<i>adv.</i>	of course	自行车	zìxíngchē	<i>n.</i>	bicycle
意大利	Yìdàlì	<i>n.</i>	Italy	飞机	fēijī	<i>n.</i>	aeroplane
餐厅	cāntīng	<i>n.</i>	restaurant	加油站	jiāyóuzhàn	<i>n.</i>	petrol station
旅行	lǚxíng	<i>v./n.</i>	travel	火车站	huǒchēzhàn	<i>n.</i>	railway station
暑假	shǔjià	<i>n.</i>	summer holiday	停车场	tíngchēchǎng	<i>n.</i>	car park
假期	jiàqī	<i>n.</i>	holiday	飞机场	fēijīchǎng	<i>n.</i>	airport

UNIT
11

Wǒ huì tiàowǔ
我会跳舞。

I can dance.

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the names of sports with the pictures.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| pīngpāngqiú
1 乒乓球 | yóuyǒng
3 游泳 | wǎngqiú
5 网球 |
| lánqiú
2 篮球 | tiàowǔ
4 跳舞 | zúqiú
6 足球 |



Now listen and number the sports in the order you hear them.

生词 New words

zúqiú 足球	football	xīwàng 希望	hope
xiàge 下个	next	yíng 赢	win
xiǎng 想	think, want	wǎngqiú 网球	tennis
bǐsài 比赛	match, competition	huì 会	can, be able to
qiú 球	ball, ball game	tiàowǔ 跳舞	dance
duì 队	team	guo 过	indicator of past actions
Yīnggélán 英格兰	England	yóuyǒng 游泳	swim
tīyùchǎng 体育场	stadium, sports ground		



2 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are planning to do some exercise at the weekend.

Shǐdīfū Wáng Yù nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
史蒂夫： 王玉，你喜欢什么运动？

Wáng Yù Wǒ xǐhuan lánqiú yě xǐhuan zúqiú
王玉： 我喜欢篮球，也喜欢足球。

Shǐdīfū Xiàge yuè nǐ xiǎng qù kàn zúqiú bǐsài
史蒂夫： 下个月你想去看足球比赛
ma
吗？

Wáng Yù Dāngrán xiǎng Shénme qiúduì bǐsài
王玉： 当然想！什么球队比赛？

Shǐdīfū Zhōngguóduì hé Yīnggélán duì zài
史蒂夫： 中国队和英格兰队，在
wǒmen dàxué fùjìn de tīyùchǎng
我们大学附近的体育场。

Wáng Yù Hǎo wǒ gēn nǐ qù kàn Wǒ xīwàng
王玉： 好，我跟你去看。我希望
Zhōngguóduì yíng
中国队赢！

Shǐdīfū Wǒ xīwàng Yīnggélán duì yíng
史蒂夫： 我希望英格兰队赢！

Wáng Yù Zhège zhōumò nǐ xiǎng qù yùndòng ma
王玉： 这个周末你想去运动吗？



Shǐdīfū Shénme yùndòng
 史蒂夫： 什么 运动？

Wáng Yù Wǒmen qù dǎ wǎngqiú hǎo ma
 王玉： 我们去打网球，好吗？

Shǐdīfū Duibuqǐ wǒ bù huì dǎ wǎngqiú
 史蒂夫： 对不起，我不会打网球，
 dànshì wǒ huì tiàowǔ wǒmen
 但是我会跳舞，我们
 yìqǐ qù tiàowǔ ba
 一起去跳舞吧。

Wáng Yù Wǒ bù xǐhuan tiàowǔ yě méi xuéguo
 王玉： 我不喜欢跳舞，也没学过。

Shǐdīfū Wǒmen qù yóuyǒng zěnmeyàng
 史蒂夫： 我们去游泳怎么样？

Wáng Yù Hǎo wǒ zuì xǐhuan yóuyǒng
 王玉： 好！我最喜欢游泳。

Shǐdīfū Wǒmen míngtiān zǎoshang qù kěyǐ ma
 史蒂夫： 我们明天早上去，可以吗？

Wáng Yù Wǒ zǎoshang yào pǎobù xiàwǔ qù ba
 王玉： 我早上要跑步，下午去吧。

Shǐdīfū Hǎo míngtiān jiàn
 史蒂夫： 好，明天见。



3 Listen again and check the true statements.

- Wáng Yù xǐhuan dǎ lánqiú
 1 王玉喜欢打篮球。
- Zhège yuè tǐyùchǎng yǒu zúqiú
 2 这个月 体育场 有 足球
 bǐsài
 比赛。
- Wáng Yù kěyǐ gēn Shǐdīfū qù kàn
 3 王玉可以 跟 史蒂夫 去看
 zúqiú bǐsài
 足球 比赛。
- Shǐdīfū bù huì dǎ wǎngqiú
 4 史蒂夫 不会 打 网球。
- Wáng Yù xǐhuan tiàowǔ
 5 王玉 喜欢 跳舞。
- Tāmen míngtiān xiàwǔ qù yóuyǒng
 6 他们 明天 下午 去 游泳。

4 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 2 using different sports.



5 Listen and complete the table with the names of sports.

	xǐhuan 喜欢	bù xǐhuan 不喜欢
Mǎkè 马克		
Yǒngmín 永民		
Ānnà 安娜		

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the facts in the table.

- Mǎkè xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
 A: 马克喜欢 什么 运动？
- Tā xǐhuan
 B: 他 喜欢……。
- Mǎkè bù xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
 A: 马克不 喜欢 什么 运动？
- Tā bù xǐhuan
 B: 他 不 喜欢……。

Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "zh" and "ch"



1 Say the words aloud.

zh	zhè 这	zhù 住	zhāng 张
ch	chē 车	chū 出	cháng 长

Now listen and repeat.



2 Listen and check the words you hear.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a 只 | <input type="checkbox"/> b 吃 |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a 真 | <input type="checkbox"/> b 陈 |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a 赵 | <input type="checkbox"/> b 超 |

Now listen again and say the words.



3 Listen and say the words.

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|
| 1 跑步 pǎobù | 跳舞 tiàowǔ | 游泳 yóuyǒng |
| 2 运动 yùndòng | 比赛 bǐsài | 球队 qiúduì |
| 3 想 xiǎng | 会 huì | 希望 xīwàng |

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using the words in brackets.

1 A: 我姐姐喜欢吃意大利菜。
Wǒ jiějie xǐhuan chī Yìdàlì cài

B: _____ (我哥哥, 也)
wǒ gēge yě

2 A: 请问附近有没有超市?
Qǐngwèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu chāoshì

B: _____ (有)
yǒu

3 A: 赵老师会坐火车去吗?
Zhào lǎoshī huì zuò huǒchē qù ma

B: _____ (会)
huì

4 A: 这个周末你买了什么?
Zhège zhōumò nǐ mǎile shénme

B: _____ (一条长裙子)
yī tiáo cháng qúnzi

5 Work in pairs. Talk about whether you can play and if you like playing the sports below.

pīngpāngqiú 乒乓球	lánqiú 篮球
tiàowǔ 跳舞	yóuyǒng 游泳

A: 你会……吗?
Nǐ huì ma

B: 我会。 / 我不会。
Wǒ huì / Wǒ bù huì

A: 你喜欢……吗?
Nǐ xǐhuan ma

B: 我喜欢……。 / 我不喜欢……。
Wǒ xǐhuan / Wǒ bù xǐhuan

6 Work with another pair. Tell them if your partner in Activity 5 can play and likes playing the different sports.

…… (不) 会……, 他 / 她 (不)
xǐhuan 喜欢……。

CHINESE TO GO



Encouraging people

Jiāyóu 加油! Come on!

Bié fàngqì 别放弃! Don't give up!

Nǐ néng xíng 你能行! You can do it!

Jiānchí jiù shì shènglì 坚持就是胜利!

Perseverance leads to success.

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Work in pairs. Discuss which of these sports you have tried.



a bèngjí
蹦极



b huáxuě
滑雪



c chōnglàng
冲浪



d qiánshuǐ
潜水

2 Read Mark's questionnaire and answer the questions.

Mǎkè huì shénme yùndòng

1 马克会什么运动？

Mǎkè měi xīngqī zuò duōshao gè xiǎoshí yùndòng

2 马克每星期做多少个小时运动？

Tā hé shéi yìqǐ zuò yùndòng

3 他和谁一起做运动？

Tā zài nǎlǐ zuò yùndòng

4 他在哪里做运动？

生词 New words

xiūxián 休闲	leisure	huáxuě 滑雪	ski
wènjuàn 问卷	questionnaire	qiánshuǐ 潜水	dive
xìngbié 性别	gender	bèngjí 蹦极	bungee jump
nán 男	male	qítā 其他	others, other
tī 踢	play (with feet), kick	xiǎoshí 小时	hour
pīngpāngqiú 乒乓球	table tennis	shíhou 时候	time
chōnglàng 冲浪	surf		

学生运动和休闲问卷

xìngmíng Mǎkè niánlíng shíjiǔ suì
姓名：马克 年龄：19岁
xìngbié nán guójí Àodàlià
性别：男 国籍：澳大利亚

Nǐ huì shénme yùndòng
你会什么运动？

tī zúqiú 踢足球	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	chōnglàng 冲浪	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
yóuyǒng 游泳	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	huáxuě 滑雪	<input type="checkbox"/>
dǎ lánqiú 打篮球	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	qiánshuǐ 潜水	<input type="checkbox"/>
dǎ pīngpāngqiú 打乒乓球	<input type="checkbox"/>	bèngjí 蹦极	<input type="checkbox"/>
qítā 其他	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Nǐ měi xīngqī zuò duōshao gè xiǎoshí yùndòng
你每星期做多少个小时运动？

0 1-2 3-4 5-10

Nǐ shénme shíhou zuò yùndòng
你什么时候做运动？

Měitiān xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn
每天下午五点。

Nǐ hé shéi yìqǐ zuò yùndòng
你和谁一起做运动？

Hé péngyou yìqǐ zuò
和朋友们一起做。

Nǐ zài nǎlǐ zuò yùndòng
你在哪里做运动？

jiālǐ xuéxiào tǐyùchǎng
 家里 学校 体育场

3 Answer the questionnaire using your own information.

4 Write a blog post about your favourite sports and recreational activities.

wǒ de xiūxián yùndòng
我的休闲运动

主页 博客 相册 档案 互动 Next

Wǒ de míngzì shì _____, jīnnián _____
我的名字是 _____, 今年 _____
suì. Wǒ shì _____ rén,
_____ 岁。我是 _____ 人,
xiànzài zhù zài _____. Wǒ
现在住在 _____. 我
huì _____, _____, yě huì _____
会 _____, _____, 也会 _____
Wǒ měitiān yùndòng _____.
_____。我 每天 运动 _____
hé _____ yìqǐ
_____ , 和 _____ 一起
yùndòng _____
运动 _____。

分享 | 评论 (16) | 阅读 (476) | 固定连接 | 发表于 15:36

Language in use

Using modal verbs **kěyǐ huì**
可以 / 会

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate			
	Modal verb	Adverbial	Verb	Object
Wǒ 我	kěyǐ 可以		shuō 说	Yīngyǔ 英语。
Mǎkè 马克	kěyǐ 可以	gēn nǐ 跟你	qù 去。	
Nǐ 你	kěyǐ 可以	yìqǐ 一起	qù 去。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 可以 can be used to talk about ability and possibility.
- 2 可以 can be used to talk about permission.
- 3 可以 can be used to talk about obligation.

2 Look at the sentences.

Tā huì yóuyǒng ma
她会游泳吗?
Does she know how to swim?

Tā huì tiàowǔ
他会跳舞。
He knows how to dance.

Wǒmen huì chàng Zhōngwéngē
我们会唱中文歌。
We can sing Chinese songs.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 会 means an ability to do something.
- 2 会 is used to ask for permission.
- 3 会 is usually followed by a verb.

3 Complete the sentences with 可以 or 会 .

- 1 你 _____ 去他的生日派对。
 2 我 _____ 唱中文歌。
 3 她 _____ 打网球。
 4 你 _____ 跳舞吗?
 5 这条裙子真便宜, 你 _____ 买。

▶ Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

Pivotal sentences

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate			
	Verb 1 (pivotal verb)	Object 1	Verb 2	Object 2
Wǒ 我	xīwàng 希望	Zhōngguóduì 中国队	yíng 赢。	
Shǐdìfū 史蒂夫	qǐng 请	Wáng Yù 王玉	chī 吃	Zhōngcān 中餐。
Mǎkè 马克	qǐng 请	Ānnà 安娜	kàn 看	diànyǐng 电影。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 In a pivotal sentence, the object of the first verb functions as the subject of the second verb.
 2 A pivotal verb must always come after another verb.
 3 Pivotal sentences can be used to express an invitation or wish.

2 Write a pivotal sentence using 请 or 希望 .

▶ Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

Talking about past actions with

guo
过

1 Look at the sentences.

- Tā qùguo Yìdàlì
她去过意大利。 She has been to Italy.
 Tā xuéguo Zhōngwén
她学过中文。 She has studied Chinese.
 Wǒ chīguo Rìběncài
我吃过日本菜。 I have had Japanese food.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 过 is always used with a verb.
 2 过 is usually followed by a noun.
 3 过 cannot be used in the past perfect tense.

2 Look at the sentences.

- Tā méi qùguo Yìdàlì
她没去过意大利。 She has not been to Italy.
 Tā méi xuéguo Zhōngwén
她没学过中文。 She has never studied Chinese.
 Wǒ méi chīguo Rìběncài
我没吃过日本菜。 I have never had Japanese food.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 没 means "not".
 2 没 can be used before the subject.
 3 没 should be placed after a noun or pronoun.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- Guilín qù tā guo
1 桂林 / 去 / 他 / 过 / 。
 diànyǐng guo kàn tā zhège
2 电影 / 过 / 看 / 她 / 这个 / 。
 guo zuò hùshi tā méi
3 过 / 做 / 护士 / 她 / 没 / 。
 méi Yìdàlicài guo tā chī
4 没 / 意大利菜 / 过 / 他 / 吃 / 。

▶ Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

LESSON 3

Communication activity

1 Work in groups.

You work for a local school which runs various after-school and weekend classes. You are working with your colleagues on an advertisement to promote the classes. Plan the following:

- bān
• 班 (classes)
- riqī hé shíjiān
• 日期 (dates) 和 时间
- xuésheng niánlíng
• 学生 年龄
- shàngkè dìdiǎn
• 上课 地点 (class venue)
- xuéfèi
• 学费 (fees)

Include the following information:

- directions to the school
- number of students in each class

2 Design your advertisement.

3 Present your advertisement to the class.

Now ask and answer questions about the advertisement. Use the prompts below to help you.

Qù xuéxiào zěnmē zǒu
去 学校 怎么走?

Měi bān yǒu duōshǎo gè xuésheng
每 班 有 多少 个 学生 ?

▶ Turn to pages 155 and 161 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Dance: a popular pastime

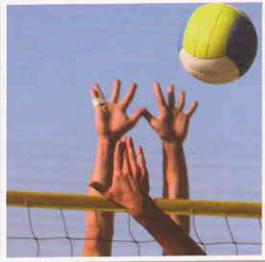
If you go to a park early in the morning in any city in China, you'll probably see a lot of people dancing to music. Dancing, as a form of exercise and relaxation, has become an important part of everyday life for many people. Apart from traditional Chinese dances such as folk dancing and *Yangge*, Western dances such as ballroom dancing are also very popular. Men and women may dance as couples or in groups. Women, particularly older women, often dance together.

Vocabulary extension

Look at the sports.



qūgùnqiú
曲棍球 hockey



páiqiú
排球 volleyball



bàngqiú
棒球 baseball



gǎnlǎnqiú
橄榄球 rugby

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's favourite sports.

Nǐ xǐhuan dǎ bàngqiú ma

A: 你喜欢打棒球吗?

Wǒ bù xǐhuan dǎ bàngqiú wǒ xǐhuan

B: 我不喜欢打棒球, 我喜欢……

Vocabulary list

足球	zúqiú	<i>n.</i>	football	性别	xìngbié	<i>n.</i>	gender
下个	xiàge		next	男	nán	<i>n.</i>	male
想	xiǎng	<i>v.</i>	think, want	踢	tī	<i>v.</i>	play (with feet), kick
比赛	bǐsài	<i>n.</i>	match, competition	乒乓球	pīngpāngqiú	<i>n.</i>	table tennis
球	qiú	<i>n.</i>	ball, ball game	冲浪	chōnglàng	<i>v.</i>	surf
队	duì	<i>n.</i>	team	滑雪	huáxuě	<i>v.</i>	ski
英格兰	Yīnggélán	<i>n.</i>	England	潜水	qiánshuǐ	<i>v.</i>	dive
体育场	tǐyùchǎng	<i>n.</i>	stadium, sports ground	蹦极	bèngjí	<i>v.</i>	bungee jump
希望	xīwàng	<i>v.</i>	hope	其他	qítā	<i>pron.</i>	others, other
赢	yíng	<i>v.</i>	win	小时	xiǎoshí	<i>n.</i>	hour
网球	wǎngqiú	<i>n.</i>	tennis	时候	shíhou	<i>n.</i>	time
会	huì	<i>v.</i>	can, be able to	曲棍球	qūgùnqiú	<i>n.</i>	hockey
跳舞	tiàowǔ	<i>v.</i>	dance	棒球	bàngqiú	<i>n.</i>	baseball
过	guo		indicator of past actions	排球	páiqiú	<i>n.</i>	volleyball
游泳	yóuyǒng	<i>v.</i>	swim	橄榄球	gǎnlǎnqiú	<i>n.</i>	rugby
休闲	xiūxián	<i>n./v.</i>	leisure, have leisure				
问卷	wènjuàn	<i>n.</i>	questionnaire				

UNIT
12

Wǒmen qù kàn jīngjù
我们去 看 京剧。

*We're going to the
Beijing opera.*

LESSON 1



2 Listen to the conversation.

Anna, Steve and Yeong-min are discussing their holiday plans.

TIWU

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the words with the pictures.

Xiānggǎng
1 香港

Xīnjiāpō
3 新加坡

jīngjù
2 京剧

yīnyuèhuì
4 音乐会



Now listen and say the words.

Ānnà Yǒngmín Shǐdīfū jiàqī nǐmen dǎsuan
安娜：永民，史蒂夫，假期你们打算
zuò shénme
做什么？

Yǒngmín Wǒ měi gè jiàqī dōu qù lǚxíng
永民：我每个假期都去旅行。

Shǐdīfū Wǒ yě dǎsuan qù lǚxíng huòzhě huí jiā
史蒂夫：我也打算去旅行，或者回家。

Ānnà Bié huí jiā le tài yuǎn le
安娜：别回家了，太远了！

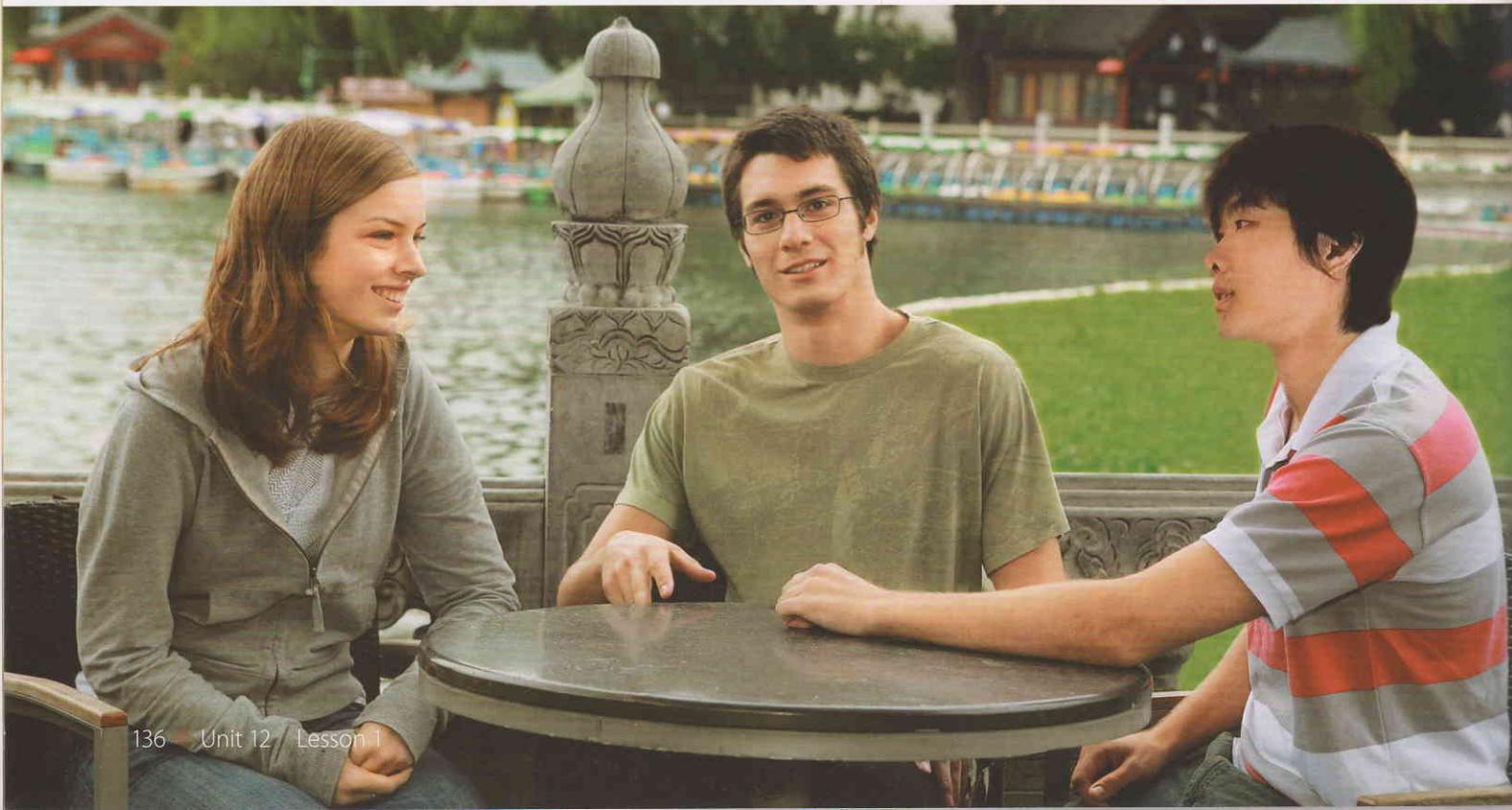
Wǒmen yìqǐ qù lǚxíng hǎo ma
我们一起去旅行，好吗？

Shǐdīfū Qù shénme dìfāng Xīnjiāpō hái shì
史蒂夫：去什么地方？新加坡还是

Xiānggǎng
香港？

Yǒngmín Dāngrán shì Xiānggǎng wǒ xǐhuan Xiānggǎng
永民：当然是香港，我喜欢香港。

Ānnà Xīnjiāpō tài yuǎn le qù Xiānggǎng ba
安娜：新加坡太远了，去香港吧。



Zài nàlǐ wǒmen kěyǐ gòuwù yě
在那里我们可以购物，也
kěyǐ tīng yīnyuèhuì
可以听音乐会。

Shǐdìfū Nàme wǒmen qù Xiānggǎng ba
史蒂夫：那么我们去香港吧。

Yǒngmín Wǒmen zěnmē qù Zuò fēijī háishi
永民：我们怎么去？坐飞机还是
zuò huǒchē
坐火车？

Ānnà Dāngrán shì zuò fēijī fēijī hěn
安娜：当然是坐飞机，飞机很
fāngbiàn
方便。

Yǒngmín Huí Běijīng yǐhòu wǒmen kěyǐ qù
永民：回北京以后我们可以去
kàn jīngjù
看京剧。

Shǐdìfū Tài hǎo le wǒ zuì xǐhuan kàn jīngjù
史蒂夫：太好了，我最喜欢看京剧。

生词 New words

dǎsuan		Xiānggǎng	
打算	plan	香港	Hong Kong
huòzhě	or	nàme	
或者	(in a statement)	那么	then, so
huí		fēijī	
回	go back	飞机	aeroplane
bié		yǐhòu	
别	do not	以后	after
dìfang		jīngjù	
地方	place	京剧	Beijing opera
Xīnjiāpō			
新加坡	Singapore		



3 Listen again and check the correct answers.

Ānnà Yǒngmín hé Shǐdìfū yào qù
1 安娜、永民和史蒂夫要去
shénme dìfang
什么地方？

Běijīng
 a 北京

Xiānggǎng
 b 香港

Xīnjiāpō
 c 新加坡

Tāmen jiàqī bù dǎsuan zuò shénme?
2 他们假期不打算做什么？

kàn jīngjù
 a 看京剧

tīng yīnyuèhuì
 b 听音乐会

páshān
 c 爬山

Tāmen dǎsuan zěnmē qù Xiānggǎng?
3 他们打算怎么去香港？

zuò huǒchē
 a 坐火车

zuò dìtiě
 b 坐地铁

zuò fēijī
 c 坐飞机

4 Work in groups of three and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Create your own plans for the coming holiday.

Pronunciation and speaking

Sentence intonation



2-48

1 Listen to the sentences. Pay attention to the intonation.

Wǒmen míngtiān qù hǎo ma
1 我们明天去，好吗？↗

Jiàqī wǒ xiǎng qù gōngzuò。
2 假期我想去工作。↘

Wǒ dǎsuan qù lǚxíng nǐ ne
3 我打算去旅行，你呢？↗

Xīnjiāpō tài yuǎn le。
4 新加坡太远了。↘

Now listen again and say the sentences.
Make sure you use the correct intonation.



2-49

2 Read the sentences aloud.

Wǒmen yìqǐ qù lǚxíng hǎo ma
1 我们一起去旅行，好吗？

Wǒmen kěyǐ qù kàn jīngjù。
2 我们可以去看京剧。

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù nǐ ne
3 我叫王玉，你呢？

Wǒ zuì xǐhuan tīng yīnyuèhuì。
4 我最喜欢听音乐会。

Now listen and repeat.



2-50

3 Listen and say the words.

jiàqī dǎsuan huíjiā
1 假期 打算 回家

yǐhòu dāngrán huòzhě
2 以后 当然 或者

lǚxíng yīnyuèhuì jīngjù
3 旅行 音乐会 京剧

4 Work in pairs.

Student A: Think of an activity you plan to do on holiday.

Student B: Ask Student A questions about the activity he or she wants to do.

Nǐ jiàqī dǎsuan zuò shénme
A: 你假期打算做什么？

Wǒ dǎsuan
B: 我打算……

Nǐ dǎsuan qù shénme dìfang
A: 你打算去什么地方？

Wǒ dǎsuan qù
B: 我打算去……

Nǐ hé shéi yìqǐ qù
A: 你和谁一起去？

Wǒ
B: 我……

Now change roles.



2-51

CHINESE TO GO

Expressions for travellers

Wǒ yào dìng piào / dìng fángjiān
我要订票/订房间。

I want to book a ticket/room.

Wǒ yào tuì piào / gǎiqiān
我要退票/改签。

I want to get a refund/change a ticket.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the names of the cities.



Shànghǎi
1 上海



Běijīng
2 北京



Xī' ān
3 西安



Guǎngzhōu
4 广州

2 Read Wang Yu's online dialogue with Bob and Peter, her friends in the UK.

生词 New words

jīnnián 今年	this year	Xī' ān 西安	Xi' an
nián 年	year	yīnggāi 应该	should
hǎowán 好玩	fun	Bīngmǎyǒng 兵马俑	Terracotta Warriors
shuō 说	say	piàoliang 漂亮	pretty
zhǐ 只	only	chéngshì 城市	city
juéde 觉得	think, feel	qiān 千	thousand
bān 班	measure word	lìshǐ 历史	history
cóng 从	from	zhǔyi 主意	idea

Wang Yu

Bob

Jīnnián jiàqī wǒ dāsuan qù Zhōngguó lǚxíng.
今年假期我打算去中国旅行。
Zhōngguó hǎowán de dìfang hěn duō dànshì wǒ
中国好玩的地方很多，但是我
zhǐ kěyǐ qù yī gè dìfang Péngyou shuō Shànghǎi
只可以去一个地方。朋友说上海
hé Běijīng dōu hěn bùcuò Nimen juéde ne
和北京都很不错。你们觉得呢？

Wang Yu

Qù Běijīng ba Měi tiān dōu yǒu liǎng bān fēijī
去北京吧。每天都有两班飞机
cóng Yīngguó dào Běijīng hěn fāngbiàn
从英国到北京，很方便。

Peter

Xī' ān shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de dìfang wǒ juéde
西安是我最喜欢的地方，我觉得
nǐ yīnggāi qù Xī' ān Nǐ kěyǐ kàn Bīngmǎyǒng
你应该去西安。你可以看兵马俑。
Wáng Yù nǐ juéde yīnggāi qù Xī' ān ma
王玉，你觉得 Bob 应该去西安吗？

Wang Yu

Xī' ān shì yī gè hěn piàoliang de chéngshì yǒu
西安是一个很漂亮的城市，有
jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ
几千年的历史。

Bob

Hǎo zhǔyi wǒ xǐhuan lìshǐ Xī' ān bùcuò
好主意，我喜欢历史。西安不错。
Wǒ zěnme qù Xī' ān ne
我怎么去西安呢？

Wang Yu

Nǐ kěyǐ zuò fēijī
你可以坐飞机。

关闭 (C) 发送 (S)



3 Check the true statements.

- zhǐ kěyǐ qù yī gè dìfāng lǚxíng
 1 Bob 只可以去一个地方旅行。
- Měi xīngqī dōu yǒu liǎng bān fēijī
 2 每星期都有两班飞机
 cóng Yīngguó dào Běijīng
 从英国到北京。
- Bīngmǎyǒng zài Běijīng
 3 兵马俑在北京。
- Xī'ān yǒu jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ
 4 西安有几千年的历史。

4 Answer Wang Yu's questions.

Wang Yu

Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ zhù de chéngshì lǚxíng
 我想去你住的城市旅行。

Nàlǐ yǒu shénme hǎowán de dìfāng ma
 那里有什么好玩的地方吗?

Wǒ zhù de chéngshì hěn _____,
 我住的城市很 _____,

zhèlǐ yǒu hěn duō _____。
 这里有很多 _____。

Nǐ kěyǐ zài zhèlǐ _____,
 你可以在这里 _____,

yě kěyǐ _____。
 也可以 _____。

Nǐ kěyǐ _____ huòzhě _____。
 你可以 _____ 或者 _____。

关闭 (C) 发送 (S)

Language in use

Expressing alternatives using **huòzhě hái shì 或者/还是**

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒmen jīntiān qù huòzhě míngtiān qù
 我们今天去或者明天去。
 We go today or tomorrow.

Wǒmen jīntiān qù hái shì míngtiān qù
 我们今天去还是明天去?
 Do we go today or tomorrow?

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén huòzhě Hánguó rén
 他是中国人或者韩国人。
 He is Chinese or Korean.

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén hái shì Hánguó rén
 他是中国人还是韩国人?
 Is he Chinese or Korean?

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Both 还是 and 或者 are used to express alternatives.
- 2 Both 还是 and 或者 can be used in questions.
- 3 或者 can only be used in statements.

2 Write answers to the questions using 或者 and the words in brackets.

Jiàqī nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme lǚxíng gōngzuò
 1 假期你打算做什么? (旅行、工作)

Mǎkè xiǎng xué shénme jīngjù wǎngqiú
 2 马克想学什么? (京剧、网球)

▶ Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.



Expressing regular events with

měi dōu
每……都……

1 Look at the sentences.

Adverbial (Time)	Subject	Adverbial (Time)	Predicate		
			Adverb	Verb	Complement / Object
	wǒ 我	měi nián 每年	dōu 都	qù 去	lǚ xíng 旅行。
Měi nián 每年	wǒ 我		dōu 都	qù 去	lǚ xíng 旅行。
	shǐ dì fū 史蒂夫	měi gè 每个 zhōu mò 周末	dōu 都	kàn 看	diàn yǐng 电影。
Měi gè 每个 zhōu mò 周末	shǐ dì fū 史蒂夫		dōu 都	kàn 看	diàn yǐng 电影。
	mǎ kè 马克	měi nián 每年 jià qī 假期	dōu 都	huí 回	jiā 家。
Měi nián 每年 jià qī 假期	mǎ kè 马克		dōu 都	huí 回	jiā 家。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 每……都…… indicates regular events.
- 2 都 can appear before the adverbial time phrase.
- 3 The subject of the sentence can appear before or after the adverbial time phrase.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

měi gè mǎ kè dǎ lán qiú xīng qī sān
1 每个 / 马克 / 打篮球 / 星期三 /

dōu
都 /。

měi tiān xué zhōng wén dōu shǐ dì fū
2 每天 / 学 / 中文 / 都 / 史蒂夫 /
shàng wǔ
上午 /。

▶ Turn to page 171 for grammar reference.

LESSON 3

Communication activity

1 Work in two groups.

Group A: You work in a travel agency which specializes in action-packed holidays.

Group B: You and your family and/or friends want to go on a package tour to China. You want an active and interesting holiday.

Look at the three package tours. Prepare or answer questions about:

- when the tour begins/ends
- the kinds of activities/places of interest
- transport to and around the place

2 Talk to as many travel agents or potential customers as possible.

3 Group B vote for the travel agency which offers the best deal.

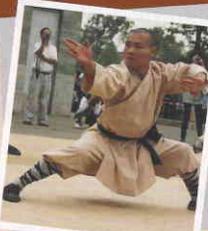
▶ Turn to pages 155 and 161 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Chinese kung fu

Chinese martial arts, popularly known in English as kung fu, form one of the best-known examples of traditional Chinese culture. The principles of kung fu were inspired by various Chinese philosophies, as well as myths and legends, and the traits of animals. Some training styles focus on the mind, or “qi” power, and are called “internal”, while others concentrate on improving muscle and cardiovascular fitness and are labelled “external”. Even though kung fu is often seen in films and literature, and practised by millions, it takes many years of study, and only a few highly trained people truly master kung fu.

Shàolín sī gōngfū
少林寺 功夫!



- xué gōngfū
学 功夫!
- páshān
爬山!
- yóulǎn jǐngdiǎn
游览 景点!

Xiānggǎng de Zhōngguó yīnyuè hé yìshù
香港的中国音乐和艺术!

xué Zhōngguó yīnyuè
★ 学 中国 音乐!

xué shūfǎ
★ 学 书法!

chī Zhōngcān
★ 吃 中餐!



Nèiměnggǔ zhìyuànzhě xiàlìngyíng
内蒙古 志愿者 夏令营



- bāngzhù hái zǐmen xué Yīngyǔ
帮助 孩子们 学英语!
- hé hái zǐmen yìqǐ yùndòng pīngpāngqiú zúqiú
和 孩子们 一起 运动 (乒乓球、足球)!
- yóulǎn jǐngdiǎn
游览 景点!

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
竹	bamboo	篮、算
禾	grain	利、种

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

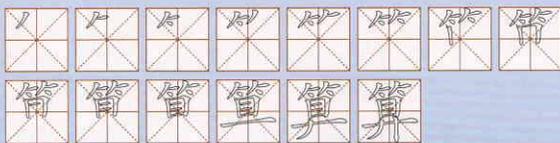
笔 租 箱 程

2 Match the words with the meanings.

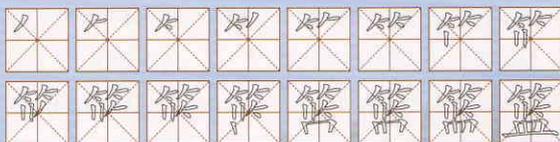
- | | |
|------|--------------|
| 1 和 | a plan |
| 2 篮球 | b Hong Kong |
| 3 打算 | c and |
| 4 香港 | d basketball |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

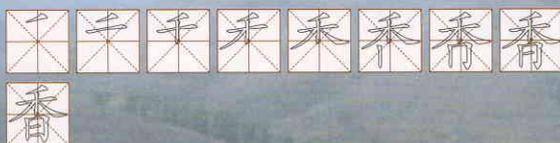
算



篮



香



和



Review and practice

1 Circle the odd word out.

- | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|
| měi tiān | měi yuè | míngtiān |
| 1 每天 | 每月 | 明天 |
| huòzhě | háishi | hé |
| 2 或者 | 还是 | 和 |
| lǚxíng | dǎsuan | xiǎng |
| 3 旅行 | 打算 | 想 |

2 Complete the sentences with 或者 or 还是.

- Mǎkè Yǒngmín dōu kěyǐ
1 马克 _____ 永民 都可以。
- Nǐ xiǎng tīng yīnyuèhuì kàn diànyǐng
2 你想 听 音乐会 _____ 看 电影?
- Tā jiào Mǎ Yǒng Mǎkè
3 他叫 马永 _____ 马克?
- Wǒmen xiàwǔ qù dǎ lánqiú pīngpāngqiú bā
4 我们 下午 去 打 篮球 _____ 乒乓球 吧。

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- dǎsuan lǚxíng Wáng Yù qù
1 打算 / 旅行 / 王 玉 / 去 / 。
- měi gè huí jiā tā dōu jiàqī
2 每个 / 回家 / 他 / 都 / 假期 / 。
- zhǐ yī gè qù wǒ dìfāng kěyǐ
3 只 / 一个 / 去 / 我 / 地方 / 可以 / 。
- Shànghǎi tā xǐhuan zuì qù
4 上海 / 她 / 喜欢 / 最 / 去 / 。

Vocabulary extension

Check the activities you would like to do during the summer holiday. Think about the places you would like to go to.

- shíxí 实习 work as an intern
- dǎgōng 打工 do part-time work
- yěyíng 野营 go camping
- zuò zhìyuànzhe 做 志愿者 work as a volunteer

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your activities.



Vocabulary list

打算	dǎsuan	v.	plan	班	bān	measure word	
或者	huòzhě	conj.	or (in a statment)	从	cóng	prep.	from
回	huí	v.	go back	西安	Xī'ān	n.	Xi'an
别	bié	adv.	do not	应该	yīnggāi	modal v.	should
地方	dìfang	n.	place	兵马俑	Bīngmǎyǒng	n.	Terracotta Warriors
新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore	漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty
香港	Xiānggǎng	n.	Hong Kong	城市	chéngshì	n.	city
那么	nàme	conj.	then, so	千	qiān	num.	thousand
飞机	fēijī	n.	aeroplane	历史	lìshǐ	n.	history
以后	yǐhòu	n.	after	主意	zhǔyi	n.	idea
京剧	jīngjù	n.	Beijing opera	广州	Guǎngzhōu	n.	Guangzhou
今年	jīnnián	n.	this year	实习	shíxí	v.	work as an intern
年	nián	n.	year	打工	dǎgōng	v.	do part-time work
好玩	hǎowán	adj.	fun	野营	yěyíng	v.	go camping
说	shuō	v.	say	志愿者	zhìyuànzhe	n.	volunteer
只	zhǐ	adv.	only				
觉得	juéde	v.	think, feel				

Review 3

Vocabulary

1 Circle the odd word out.

1 zúqiú 足球 wǎngqiú 网球 lánqiú 篮球 yóuyǒng 游泳

2 dōngbian 东边 qiánbian 前边 běibian 北边 nánbian 南边

3 shūdiàn 书店 yínháng 银行 yóujú 邮局 fùjìn 附近

4 fēijī 飞机 huǒchē 火车 dìtiě 地铁 dìfang 地方

2 Look at the phrases in the box.

dǎ lánqiú 打篮球 zuò gōnggòng qìchē 坐公共汽车

xué tiàowǔ 学跳舞 qù Shànghǎi 去上海

Now choose the correct verb to go with the nouns.

1 dìtiě 地铁 wǎngqiú 网球 Běijīng 北京 jīngjù 京剧

3 Choose the correct pinyin for the words.

1 房子 a fángzǐ b fángzi c fánzi

2 旅行 a lǚxíng b lǚxíng c lǚqíng

3 好玩 a hǎowén b hǎowǎn c hǎowán

4 运动 a yùndòng b yùdòng c yūndòng

5 怎么 a zěnmē b zènme c zénme

6 觉得 a juède b quéde c juéde

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

fùjìn 附近 bùcuò 不错 xǐhuan 喜欢
jiāotōng 交通 jiàqī 假期 yìqǐ 一起

1 Wáng Yù míngtiān wǒmen _____ qù páshān ba.
王玉，明天我们 _____ 去爬山吧。

2 Qǐngwèn _____ yǒu dìtiězhàn ma?
请问，_____ 有地铁站吗？

3 Mǎkè nǐ _____ dǎ lánqiú ma?
马克，你 _____ 打篮球吗？

4 _____ nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme?
_____ 你打算做什么？

5 Zhèr de _____ fāngbiàn ma?
这儿的 _____ 方便吗？

6 Shànghǎi shì yí gè hěn _____ de dìfang.
上海是一个很 _____ 的地方。

Grammar

1 Write questions for the answers using the words in the box.

zěnmē 怎么 ma 吗 shénme 什么 nǎli 哪里

1 A: _____

Wǒ zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù sishísān hào.
B: 我住在公园路 43 号。

2 A: _____

Wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì 95282664.
B: 我的电话号码是 95282664。

3 A: _____

Shì tā shì wǒ jiějie.
B: 是，她是我姐姐。

4 A: _____

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù.
B: 我们坐地铁去。

2 Match the parts to complete the sentences.

- Gōngyuán Lù zài yínháng de qiánbian
1 公园路在银行的前边，
- Fángzi zài dìtiězhàn fùjìn
2 房子在地铁站附近，
- Wǒ jiā fùjìn yǒu gōnggòng qìchēzhàn
3 我家附近有公共汽车站，
- Wǒ xǐhuan gòuwù
4 我喜欢购物，
- Wǒ xǐhuan chī Zhōngcān
5 我喜欢吃中餐，
- Tā zǎoshang yào pǎobù
6 他早上要跑步，
- Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù
7 我们坐地铁去

- tā xǐhuan chī Hánguó cài
a 她喜欢吃韩国菜。
- xiàwǔ yào tī zúqiú
b 下午要踢足球。
- yóujú de hòubian
c 邮局的后边。
- tā xǐhuan zuò yùndòng
d 她喜欢做运动。
- dànshì méiyǒu dìtiězhàn
e 但是没有地铁站。
- háishi zuò chūzūchē qù
f 还是坐出租车去？
- jiāotōng hěn fāngbiàn
g 交通很方便。

3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

ba 吧 qù 去	hǎo ma 好吗 bù huì 不会	háishi 还是 dǎ 打
--------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------

Nǐ xiǎng _____ yóuyǒng ma
A: 你想 _____ 游泳吗？

Wǒ bù huì yóuyǒng
B: 我不会游泳。

Nàme wǒmen qù dǎ wǎngqiú
A: 那么我们去打网球， _____ ？

Wǒ _____ dǎ wǎngqiú dànshì wǒ huì dǎ pīngpāngqiú
B: 我 _____ 打网球，但是我会打乒乓球。

Hǎo wǒmen qù tǐyùchǎng _____ pīngpāngqiú
A: 好，我们去体育场 _____ 乒乓球。

Wǒmen zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù _____ zuò dìtiě qù
B: 我们坐公共汽车去 _____ 坐地铁去？

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù _____
A: 我们坐地铁去 _____。

4 Write sentences about what you can and cannot do using the words in the box.

tiàowǔ 跳舞 huáxuě 滑雪	bèngjí 蹦极 dǎ lánqiú 打篮球	chōnglàng 冲浪 pāizhào 拍照
------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

Integrated skills

1 Listen to the conversation and complete the table.

dìdiǎn 地点 Places	jùlí 距离 Distance
gòuwù zhōngxīn 购物中心	
cāntīng 餐厅	
jīchǎng 机场	



Dàxué zài nǎlǐ
2 大学在哪里?

Now listen again and check the true statements.

- Ānnà hé Wáng Yù yào qù Guǐlín lǚxíng
 1 安娜和王玉要去桂林旅行。
- Ānnà bù xiǎng qù gòuwù zhōngxīn tā xiǎng qù chāoshì
 2 安娜不想去购物中心，她想去超市。
- Tāmen dǎsuan qù Riběn cāntīng
 3 她们打算去日本餐厅。
- Cāntīng fùjìn yǒu yīgè fúzhuāng shìchǎng
 4 餐厅附近有一个服装市场。
- Ānnà dǎsuan zuò chūzūchē qù jīchǎng
 5 安娜打算坐出租车去机场。
- Tāmen zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù jīchǎng
 6 她们坐公共汽车去机场。

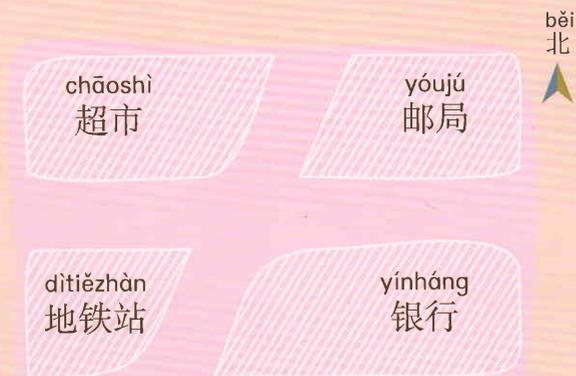


Gōnggòngqìchēzhàn zài nǎlǐ Chāoshì ne
3 公共汽车站在哪里? 超市呢?

3 Read the passage.

Mǎkè xǐhuan yùndòng Tā xǐhuan pǎobù
马克喜欢运动。他喜欢跑步、
dǎ lánqiú tī zúqiú hái xǐhuan yóuyǒng
打篮球、踢足球，还喜欢游泳，
dànshì tā bù xǐhuan dǎ pīngpāngqiú Mǎkè
但是他不喜欢打乒乓球。马克
měitiān dōu zuò yùndòng Zhège zhōumò tā
每天都做运动。这个周末，他
dǎsuan hé Shīdīfū yīqǐ qù páshān ránhòu qù
打算和史蒂夫一起去爬山，然后去
cāntīng chī wǎnfàn Mǎkè xǐhuan chī Zhōngcān
餐厅吃晚饭。马克喜欢吃中餐，
dànshì Shīdīfū xǐhuan chī Yìdàlicài Wǎnshàng
但是史蒂夫喜欢吃意大利菜。晚上
tāmen dǎsuan qù kàn diànyǐng
他们打算去看电影。

2 Read the map and answer the questions.



Yóujú zài nǎlǐ Dìtiězhàn ne
1 邮局在哪里? 地铁站呢?

Now answer the questions.

- Mǎkè xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
1 马克喜欢什么运动?
- Mǎkè bù xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
2 马克不喜欢什么运动?
- Mǎkè měitiān dōu zuò shénme
3 马克每天都做什么?
- Mǎkè zhège zhōumò dǎsuan zuò shénme
4 马克这个周末打算做什么?
- Shídìfū xǐhuan chī shénme cài
5 史蒂夫喜欢吃什么菜?

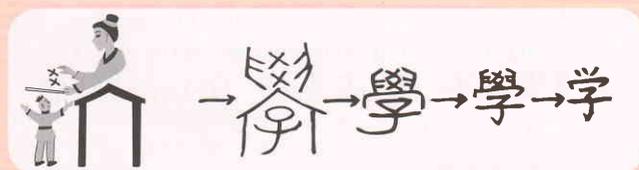
4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- fùjìn yóujú méiyǒu
1 附近 / 邮局 / 没有 /。
- Wáng Yù qù lǚxíng dǎsuan huíjiā huòzhě
2 王玉 / 去旅行 / 打算 / 回家 / 或者 /。
- xǐhuan Mǎkè dǎ lánqiú yóuyǒng háishi
3 喜欢 / 马克 / 打篮球 / 游泳 / 还是 /?
- tāmen zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù zuò dìtiě qù
4 他们 / 坐公共汽车去 / 坐地铁去 /
- háishi
还是 /?
- dōu měi gè jiàqī huíjiā tā
5 都 / 每个假期 / 回家 / 他 /。

Enjoy Chinese



xué	学	learn
dàxué	大学	university
zhōngxué	中学	middle school
xiǎoxué	小学	primary school
xuéxiào	学校	school
xuésheng	学生	student



The original meaning of 学 is to learn or accept knowledge. Its ancient shape looks like a child learning mathematics in a house. The top part represents two hands doing mathematics, while the bottom represents a child in a house. 廴 is two hands. 宀 indicates the roof of a house. 子 refers to the things being counted, and 子 is the child.



Language support

Numbers

0	líng 零	12	shí'èr 十二
1	yī 一	15	shíwǔ 十五
2	èr 二	20	èrshí 二十
3	sān 三	30	sānshí 三十
4	sì 四	40	sìshí 四十
5	wǔ 五	100	yībǎi 一百
6	liù 六	150	yībǎi wǔshí 一百五十
7	qī 七	200	èrbǎi 二百
8	bā 八	255	èrbǎi wǔshíwǔ 二百五十五
9	jiǔ 九	378	sānbǎi qīshíbā 三百七十八
10	shí 十	591	wúbǎi jiǔshíyī 五百九十一
11	shíyī 十一	1000	yīqiān 一千

Months and days

January	Yīyuè 一月	Monday	Xīngqīyī 星期一
February	Èryuè 二月	Tuesday	Xīngqī'èr 星期二
March	Sānyuè 三月	Wednesday	Xīngqīsān 星期三
April	Sìyuè 四月	Thursday	Xīngqīsì 星期四
May	Wǔyuè 五月	Friday	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五
June	Liùyuè 六月	Saturday	Xīngqīliù 星期六
July	Qīyuè 七月	Sunday	Xīngqīrì tiān 星期日/天
August	Bāyuè 八月		
September	Jiǔyuè 九月		
October	Shíyuè 十月		
November	Shíyīyuè 十一月		
December	Shí'èryuè 十二月		

Measure words

Measure word	Pinyin	Main Use	Example
个	gè	individual things, people	yī gè rén 一个人
把	bǎ	objects that can be held	yī bǎ dāo 一把刀
杯	bēi	cups/glasses	yī bēi jiǔ 一杯酒
本	běn	books, magazines, printed matter	yī běn shū 一本书
口	kǒu	people in a family	yī jiā wǔ kǒu rén 一家五口人
双	shuāng	objects that naturally come in pairs	yī shuāng xié 一双鞋

Measure word	Pinyin	Main Use	Example
件	jiàn	clothing	yī jiàn chènshān 一件衬衫
辆	liàng	wheeled vehicles (cars, bicycles, etc)	yī liàng chē 一辆车
间	jiān	rooms	yī jiān fángzi 一间房子
块	kuài	pieces of something	yī kuài shítou 一块石头
页	yè	pages of a book	yī yè shū 一页书
些	xiē	unspecified numbers, some	yìxiē xuésheng 一些学生

Pair work activities for Student A

Unit 1

1 Introduce these people to Student B.



1
Lǐ Qīng
李青



2
Mary



3
Jane



4
Steve

Tā shì
他是……
Tā shì
她是……

Tā jiào
他叫……
Tā jiào
她叫……

2 Listen to Student B and write the people's names.



5



6



7



8

3 Imagine you are at a friend's party. Greet each other, and introduce yourself. You can pretend to be one of the people above.

Unit 2

1 Ask Student B these people's nationalities.



1



2



3



4

Tā Tā shì nǎ guó rén
他/她是哪国人?

Tā Tā shì rén ma
他/她是……人吗?

2 Tell Student B these people's nationalities.



5
Měiguó rén
美国人



6
Fǎguó rén
法国人



7
Jiānádà rén
加拿大人



8
Déguó rén
德国人

Tā Tā shì rén
他/她是……人。

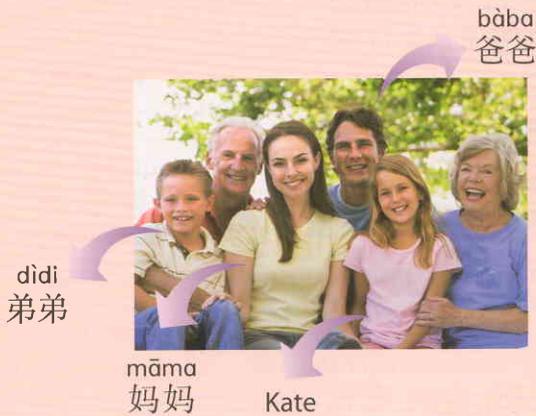
Shì tā tā shì rén
是，他/她是……人。
Bù tā tā bù shì rén
不，他/她不是……人。
Tā Tā shì rén
他/她是……人。

3 Imagine you are at a conference. Greet each other and tell each other where you are from. Introduce the people above to your partner.

Unit 3

1 Create identities for Kate and her family. Include:

- míngzi 名字
- gōngzuò 工作
- nǎ guó rén 哪国人
- zhù zài nǎli 住在哪里



2 Answer Student B's questions about Kate and her family.

3 Ask Student B about Li Na and her family. Include:

- míngzi 名字
- gōngzuò 工作
- nǎ guó rén 哪国人
- zhù zài nǎli 住在哪里

Tā bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò?
她爸爸做什么工作?

Lǐ Nà de bàba jiào shénme míngzi?
李娜的爸爸叫什么名字?

Tā shì nǎ guó rén?
他是哪国人?

Tā zhù zài nǎli?
他住在哪里?



Unit 4

1 Create a Sina profile for Jane.



2 Answer Student B's questions about the profile that you have created.

3 Ask Student B about the profile that he/she has created. Write the information here.



Unit 5

1 Fill in the form for a job interview.

xìngmíng
姓名: _____

niánlíng
年龄: _____

guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hàomǎ
电话 号码: _____

shǒujī hàomǎ
手机 号码: _____

dìzhǐ
地址: _____

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱: _____

2 Answer Student B's questions using your own form.

3 Interview Student B for a job. Ask questions and complete the form.

xìngmíng
姓名: _____

niánlíng
年龄: _____

guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hàomǎ
电话 号码: _____

shǒujī hàomǎ
手机 号码: _____

dìzhǐ
地址: _____

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱: _____

Unit 6

Ask Student B questions. Then complete the table and check the true statements.

Questions	Student B ...
Nǐ de shēngrì shì 你的生日是 jǐ yuè jǐ hào 几月几号? _____	Tā Tā de shēngrì shì 他/她的生日是_____。
_____	Tā Tā _____ suì 他/她_____岁。
_____	Tā Tā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì 他/她的电话号码是_____。
_____	Tā Tā de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì 他/她的电子邮箱是_____。
_____	Tā Tā xǐhuan chī Fǎguó cài 他/她喜欢吃法国菜。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqītiān bù xué Zhōngwén 他/她星期天不学中文。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqīliù qù kàn diànyǐng 他/她星期六去看电影。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā bù xǐhuan Xīngqīyī 他/她不喜欢星期一。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshàng qù pàiduì 他/她星期五晚上去派对。 <input type="checkbox"/>



Unit 7

- 1 Answer the questions with your own information.
Write your answers in the Student A column.

Questions	Student A	Student B
1 Nǐ Xīngqīyī zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你星期一 早上 几点 qǐchuáng 起床 (get up)?		
2 Nǐ Xīngqītīān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你星期天 早上 几点 qǐchuáng 起床?		
3 Nǐ Xīngqījǐ zuò yùndòng 你星期几 做 运动?		
4 Nǐ shénme shíjiān zuò yùndòng 你 什么 时间 做 运动?		
5 Nǐ zuì xǐhuan chī shénme 你 最 喜欢 吃 什么?		
6 Nǐ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ma 你 去 听 音乐会 吗?		
7 Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi 你 最 喜欢 的 演员 是 谁?		
8 Nǐ yǒu bókè ma 你 有 博客 吗?		
9 Nǐ shénme shíjiān xiě bókè 你 什么 时间 写 博客?		

- 2 Ask Student B these questions and write his/her answers in the Student B column.

- 3 Compare the answers. How similar are your habits?

Unit 8

- 1 Decide the colour and price for the following clothes.



- 2 Answer Student B's questions about your clothes.

- 3 Ask Student B about these clothes items:



Nǐ yǒu ma
你有……吗?



Nǐ yǒu shénme yánsè de
你有什么颜色的……?

Duōshao qián
多少钱?

Piányi yīdiǎnr ba
便宜一点儿吧。

Unit 9

- 1 Ask Student B directions to these places and write on the map:

gōngyuán
公园

xǐshǒujiān
洗手间

chāoshì
超市

xuéxiào
学校

běi
北



- 2 Give Student B directions to the places he/she wants to go to.

Unit 10

- 1 Look carefully at the photos. You have 30 seconds to memorize as many of the details as you can.



- 2 Close your books. Take turns to describe the photos from memory. Write down your observations.

Zhàopiàn li yǒu huángsè de chūzūchē。

A: 照片里有黄色的出租车……。

Zhàopiàn li yǒu

B: 照片里有……。

- 3 Look at the photos. Compare who has the most correct observations.



Unit 11

- 1 Complete the sentences about yourself. Write three true sentences and three false sentences.

- 1 我喜欢 _____。(sports)
 Wǒ xǐhuan _____。
- 2 我看过 _____ 比赛。
 Wǒ kànguò _____ bǐsài。
- 3 我每星期都 _____。(sports)
 Wǒ měi xīngqī dōu _____。
- 4 我不喜欢 _____。(sports)
 Wǒ bù xǐhuan _____。
- 5 我去过 _____。(place)
 Wǒ qùguo _____。
- 6 我会说 _____。(language)
 Wǒ huì shuō _____。

- 2 Exchange sentences with Student B. Guess which of his/her sentences are false. Write a cross (×) after the false sentences.

- 3 Compare the results to see who got more correct guesses.

Unit 12

- 1 Ask Student B questions and complete the holiday plan.

假期你打算做什么?
 Jiàqī nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme?

Holiday plan

	Name	Activity
1	Lǐ Hóng 李红	
2	Jiéfū 杰夫	qù páshān 去爬山。
3	Zhāng Míng 张明	
4	Líndá 琳达	xué chōnglàng 学冲浪。
5	Mǎtè 马特	
6	Lìlì 丽丽	gēn jiějie yìqǐ qù nǎinai jiā 跟姐姐一起去奶奶家。
7	Bèisī 贝丝	
8	Fēibǐ 菲比	xiān shíxí ránhòu huíjiā 先实习, 然后回家。

- 2 Answer Student B's questions using the holiday plan above.

Pair work activities for Student B

Unit 1

1 Listen to Student A and write the people's names.



1



2



3



4

2 Introduce these people to Student A.



5

Jack Hey



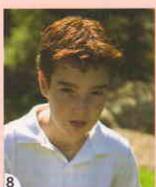
6

Wáng Péng
王 鹏



7

Emma



8

Matt

Tā shì
他是……

Tā shì
她是……

Tā jiào
他叫……

Tā jiào
她叫……

3 Imagine you are at a friend's party. Greet each other, and introduce yourself. You can pretend to be one of the people above.

Unit 2

1 Tell Student A these people's nationalities.



1



2



3



4

Rìběnrén Yìndùrén Àodàliyàrén Yīngguórén
日本人 印度人 澳大利亚人 英国人

Tā tā shì rén
他/她是……人。

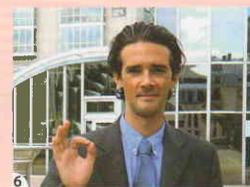
Shì tā tā shì rén
是，他/她是……人。

Bù tā tā bù shì rén Tā tā shì rén
不，他/她不是……人。他/她是……人。

2 Ask Student A these people's nationalities.



5



6



7



8

Tā tā shì nǎguó rén
他/她是哪国人?

Tā tā shì rén ma
他/她是……人吗?

3 Imagine you are at a conference. Greet each other and tell each other where you are from. Introduce the people above to your partner.

Unit 3

1 Create identities for Li Na and her family. Include:

- míngzì nǎ guó rén
- 名字 • 哪国人
- gōngzuò zhù zài nǎlǐ
- 工作 • 住在哪里



2 Ask Student A about Kate and her family. Include:

- míngzì nǎ guó rén
- 名字 • 哪国人
- gōngzuò zhù zài nǎlǐ
- 工作 • 住在哪里



de bàba jiào
Kate 的爸爸叫
shénme míngzì
什么名字?

Tā bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò
她爸爸做什么工作?

Tā shì nǎ guó rén
他是哪国人?

Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ
他住在哪里?

3 Answer Student A's questions about Li Na and her family.

Unit 4

1 Create a Sina profile for David.

我的资料

我的档案

David

xìngmíng
姓名:

guójí
国籍:

chūshēngdì
出生地:

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子邮箱:

zùi xǐhuan de dòngwù
最喜欢的动物:

zùi xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán
最喜欢的运动员:

zùi xǐhuan de yǎnyuán
最喜欢的演员:

2 Ask Student A about the profile that he/she has created. Write the information here.

我的资料

我的档案

Jane

xìngmíng
姓名:

guójí
国籍:

chūshēngdì
出生地:

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子邮箱:

zùi xǐhuan de dòngwù
最喜欢的动物:

zùi xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán
最喜欢的运动员:

zùi xǐhuan de yǎnyuán
最喜欢的演员:

3 Answer Student A's questions about the profile that you have created.

Unit 5

1 Fill in the form for a job interview.

xìngmíng
姓名: _____

niánlíng
年龄: _____

guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hàomǎ
电话号码: _____

shǒujī hàomǎ
手机号码: _____

dìzhǐ
地址: _____

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子邮箱: _____

2 Interview Student A for a job. Ask questions and complete the form.

xìngmíng
姓名: _____

niánlíng
年龄: _____

guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hàomǎ
电话号码: _____

shǒujī hàomǎ
手机号码: _____

dìzhǐ
地址: _____

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子邮箱: _____

3 Answer Student A's questions using your own form.

Unit 6

Ask Student A questions. Then complete the table and check the true statements.

Questions	Student A ...
Nǐ de shēngrì shì 你的生日是 jǐ yuè jǐ hào 几月几号? _____	Tā tā de shēngrì shì 他/她的生日是_____。
_____	Tā tā _____ suì 他/她_____岁。
_____	Tā tā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì 他/她的电话号码是_____。
_____	Tā tā de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì 他/她的电子邮箱是_____。
_____	Tā tā xǐhuan chī Fǎguó cài 他/她喜欢吃法国菜。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā tā Xīngqītiān bù xué Zhōngwén 他/她星期天不学中文。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā tā Xīngqīliù qù kàn diànyǐng 他/她星期六去看电影。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā tā bù xǐhuan Xīngqīyī 他/她不喜欢星期一。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā tā Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshàng qù pàiduì 他/她星期五晚上去派对。 <input type="checkbox"/>



Unit 7

- 1** Answer the questions with your own information.
Write your answers in the Student B column.

Questions	Student A	Student B
1 Nǐ Xīngqīyī zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你星期一 早上 几点 qǐchuáng 起床 (get up)?		
2 Nǐ Xīngqītiān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你星期天 早上 几点 qǐchuáng 起床?		
3 Nǐ Xīngqījǐ zuò yùndòng ? 你星期几 做 运动 ?		
4 Nǐ shénme shíjiān zuò yùndòng ? 你 什么 时间 做 运动 ?		
5 Nǐ zuì xǐhuan chī shénme ? 你 最 喜欢 吃 什么 ?		
6 Nǐ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ma? 你 去 听 音乐会 吗?		
7 Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi ? 你 最 喜欢 的 演员 是 谁 ?		
8 Nǐ yǒu bókè ma? 你 有 博客 吗?		
9 Nǐ shénme shíjiān xiě bókè ? 你 什么 时间 写 博客 ?		

- 2** Ask Student A these questions and write his/her answers in the Student A column.

- 3** Compare the answers. How similar are your habits?

Unit 8

- 1** Decide the colour and price for the following clothes items.



- 2** Ask Student A about these clothes:



Nǐ yǒu ma
你 有 …… 吗?

Nǐ yǒu shénme yánsè de
你 有 什么 颜色 的 ……?

Duōshao qián
多 少 钱 ?

Piányi yīdiǎnr ba
便 宜 一 点 儿 吧。

- 3** Answer Student A's questions about your clothes items.

Unit 9

- 1 Give Student A directions to the places he/she wants to go to.



- 2 Ask Student A directions to these places and write on the map above:

gòuwù zhōngxīn
购物中心

yínháng
银行

yóujú
邮局

shūdiàn
书店

Unit 10

- 1 Look carefully at the photos. You have 30 seconds to memorize as many of the details as you can.



- 2 Close your books. Take turns to describe the photos from memory. Write down your observations.

Zhàopiàn li yǒu jǐ gè rén qí
A: 照片里有几个人骑自行车……。

Zhàopiàn li yǒu
B: 照片里有……。

- 3 Look at the photos. Compare who has the most correct observations.



Unit 11

1 Complete the sentences about yourself. Write three true sentences and three false sentences.

Wǒ xǐhuan
1 我 喜欢 _____。(sports)

Wǒ kànguo bǐsài
2 我 看过 _____ 比赛。

Wǒ měi xīngqī dōu
3 我 每 星期 都 _____。(sports)

Wǒ bù xǐhuan
4 我 不 喜欢 _____。(sports)

Wǒ qùguo
5 我 去 过 _____。(place)

Wǒ huì shuō
6 我 会 说 _____。(language)

2 Exchange sentences with Student A. Guess which of his/her sentences are false. Write a cross (X) after the false sentences.

3 Compare the results to see who got more correct guesses.

Unit 12

1 Answer Student A's questions using the holiday plan.

Holiday plan

	Name	Activity
1	Lǐ Hóng 李 红	tīng yīnyuèhuì 听 音乐会。
2	Jiéfū 杰 夫	
3	Zhāng Míng 张 明	qù Xiānggǎng lǚxíng 去 香港 旅行。
4	Líndá 琳 达	
5	Mǎtè 马 特	zuò zhìyuànzhě 做 志愿者。
6	Lìlì 丽 丽	
7	Bèisī 贝 丝	qù Guǐlín lǚxíng 去 桂林 旅行。
8	Fēibǐ 菲 比	

2 Ask Student A questions and complete the holiday plan above.

Jiàqī nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme
 假期你打算做什么?

Grammar reference

Unit 1

Word order of Chinese sentences (I)

A simple Chinese sentence is made up of two parts, the subject and the predicate. The predicate usually consists of a verb and an object.

Subject	Predicate	
	Verb	Object
wǒ 我	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王玉。
I am Wang Yu.		

This word order of subject-verb-object is similar to English.

Verbs 叫 姓 是

When we use 叫 and 姓 as verbs, an object must follow.

Subject	Verb	Surname
wǒ 我	xìng 姓	Zhāng 张。
My surname is Zhang.		
tā 他	xìng 姓	Lǐ 李。
His surname is Li.		

Subject	Verb	Full name
tā 他	jiào 叫	Zhāng Xiǎoxiǎo 张小小。
He is called Zhang Xiaoxiao.		
tā 他	jiào 叫	Lǐ Lì 李力。
He is called Li Li.		

不 can be used before 叫 and 姓 to express the negative form.

wǒ bù xìng Wáng
我不姓王。 My surname is not Wang.

wǒ bù jiào Lǐ Lì
我不叫李力。 I am not called Li Li.

是, the verb “be”, is used to link two nominal expressions that refer to the same person or object.

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun
wǒ 我	shì 是	lǎoshī 老师。
I am a teacher.		
tā 他	shì 是	Zhāng Míng 张明。
He is Zhang Ming.		

Questions ending with 呢

The question particle 呢 is placed after a noun or pronoun to form a follow-up question meaning “how/what about?”. The speaker and the listener are assumed to know what the question refers to.

Preceding sentence	Follow-up question
wǒ xìng Zhāng 我姓张，	nǐ ne 你呢？
My surname is Zhang, what about you?	
tā xìng Zhāng 他姓张，	tā ne 她呢？
His surname is Zhang, what about her?	
nǐ shì xuésheng 你是学生，	tā ne 他呢？
You are a student, what about him?	
wǒ shì xuésheng 我是学生，	Zhāng Míng ne 张明呢？
I'm a student, what about Zhang Ming?	

Unit 2

Yes/no questions ending with 吗

吗 is usually used at the end of a declarative sentence to form a yes/no question. The word order remains unchanged.

Preceding sentence	ma	Answer
Nǐ shì Mǎkè 你是马克	ma 吗？	Shì wǒ shì Mǎkè 是，我是马克。
Are you Mark?		Yes, I'm Mark.
Tā xìng Lǐ 他姓李	ma 吗？	Shì tā xìng Lǐ 是，他姓李。
Is his surname Li?		Yes, his surname is Li.
Nǐ shì xuésheng 你是学生	ma 吗？	Shì wǒ shì xuésheng 是，我是学生。
Are you a student?		Yes, I'm a student.
Tā shì Zhōngguó rén 她是中国人	ma 吗？	Bù tā bù shì Zhōngguó rén 不，她不是中国人。
Is she Chinese?		No, she is not Chinese.

nǎlǐ nǎ
Questions with interrogative pronoun 哪里 / 哪

哪里 (where) and 哪 (which) are interrogative pronouns. They have the same position in sentences as the answers, that is to say, the word order in the question is the same as in the corresponding statement.

Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ
你住在哪里? Where do you live?

Wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn
我住在伦敦。 I live in London.

Nǐ shì nǎguó rén
你是哪国人? Which country are you from?

Wǒ shì Yīngguó rén
我是英国人。 I am British.

bù
Negative adverb 不

不 is a negative adverb when it is used alone or before the predicate.

Subject	Adverb	Predicate
Tā 他	bù 不	xìng Zhāng 姓张。
His surname is not Zhang.		
Wǒ 我	bù 不	shì Yīngguó rén 是英国人。
I'm not British.		

不 can also be used in a rhetorical question to confirm a fact.

Nǐ bù xìng Zhāng ma
你不姓张吗? Is your surname not Zhang?

Unit 3

yě dōu
Adverbs 也 / 都

The adverb 也 means "also" or "too". It is used after the subject and before the verb.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverb	Verb	Object / Noun
Wǒ 我	yě 也	xìng 姓	Wáng 王。
My surname is also Wang.			
Tā 他	yě 也	shì 是	xuéshēng 学生。
He is also a student.			

也 cannot be used before the subject, nor at the very end of a sentence.

The adverb 都 is similar to 也 in usage.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverbial	Verb	Object / Noun
Tāmen 她们	dōu 都	shì 是	Yīngguó rén 英国人。
They are all British.			
Tāmen 他们	dōu zài yīyuàn 都在医院	gōngzuò 工作。	
They all work at the hospital.			

Word order of Chinese sentences (II)

Word order in Chinese can be quite different from English. In Chinese, adverbs are used before the verbs they modify. In English, they can occur either before or after the verb.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverb	Verb	Object / Noun
Tā 他	bù 不	xìng 姓	Lín 林。
His surname is not Lin.			
Wǒ 我	yě 也	shì 是	Zhōngguó rén 中国人。
I am also Chinese.			
Tāmen 她们	dōu 都	shì 是	lǎoshī 老师。
They are all teachers.			

de
Pronouns as modifiers (+的)

Personal pronouns (e.g. 我) followed by the word 的 express possession. When personal pronouns are followed by a kinship term, 的 is often omitted (e.g. 我爸爸).

For persons other than family members, the use of 的 is optional, depending on the closeness of the relationship. It is usually omitted if the relationship is close.

Personal pronoun	de	Noun
wǒ 我	de 的	shū 书
my book (的 is usually needed for objects.)		
wǒ 我	de (的)	bàba 爸爸
my father (的 is usually omitted for family members.)		
tā 她	de (的)	gēge 哥哥
her elder brother (的 is usually omitted for family members.)		
tā 他	de 的	lǎoshī 老师
his teacher (His relationship with the teacher is distant.)		
nǐ 你	de (的)	jiā 家
your home (的 is often omitted before "home", a place where family members live.)		

Unit 4

shéi
Interrogative pronoun 谁

The interrogative pronoun 谁 can be used at the beginning of a question as the subject.

Subject	Verb	Object
Shéi 谁	shì 是	Mǎkè 马克?
Who is Mark?		
Shéi 谁	shì 是	nǐ de lǎoshī 你的老师?
Who is your teacher?		

谁 can also be used at the end of a question as the object.

Subject	Verb	Object
Nǐ 你	shì 是	shéi 谁?
Who are you?		
Nǐ 你	zhǎo 找	shéi 谁?
Whom are you looking for?		

When used at the end of a question, 谁 is sometimes equivalent to "whom" in English.

Numbers in Chinese

Chinese numbers use a decimal (base ten) system. There are characters for numbers zero through nine and larger numbers such as tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.

0	zero	líng 零
1	one	yī 一
2	two	èr 二
3	three	sān 三
4	four	sì 四
5	five	wǔ 五
6	six	liù 六
7	seven	qī 七
8	eight	bā 八
9	nine	jiǔ 九
10	ten	shí 十
100	one hundred	bǎi 百
1000	one thousand	qiān 千
10000	ten thousand	wàn 万

The Chinese numbers for twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by placing the character for 10 after the characters for 2 to 9. For example, twenty is written as 二十 ("two ten"), thirty is written as 三十 ("three ten"), and forty as 四十 ("four ten").

Chinese numbers such as eleven, thirteen, twenty-one, thirty-two, etc are formed by adding the characters for 1 to 9 after the characters for 10 to 90. For example, eleven is written 十一 ("ten one"), twenty-one is 二十一 ("two ten one"), twenty-two is 二十二 ("two ten two") and thirty-two as 三十二 ("three ten two").

When a zero occurs in the number (except at the end), the character for zero (零) should be used. The number 201 is written 二百零一 ("two hundred zero one").

duō dà

Asking about age using 多大

多大 can be used to ask about someone's age.

Question	Answer
Nǐ duō dà? 你多大?	Wǒ èrshíwǔ suì 我二十五岁。
How old are you?	I'm 25 years old.
Mǎkè de mèimei duō dà? 马克的妹妹多大?	Tā shíbā suì 她十八岁。
How old is Mark's younger sister?	She's 18 years old.

你多大 can only be used to ask about the age of someone who is of the same generation as the speaker, or someone who is much younger. More polite forms are used to ask about the age of a senior person.

The verb 是 (be) is not needed before the age in the answer.

zhēn hěn

真 / 很 + adjective

真 and 很 are adverbs indicating a high degree. 真 means "really" and 很 means "very". An adjective is often used together with 真 or 很 as the predicate.

Subject	Predicate	
	Adverb	Adjective
Tā 他	zhēn 真	gāo 高。
He is really tall.		
Tā 他	hěn 很	gāo 高。
He is very tall.		

The Chinese structure "Subject + 真/很 + adjective" has the same meaning as the English structure "Subject + be + really/very + adjective", but the Chinese equivalent of "be" (是) is not needed in the Chinese sentences.

For example,

Correct	Wrong
Wǒ hěn gāoxìng 我很高兴。 I am very happy.	Wǒ shì hěn gāoxìng 我是很高兴。×
Nǐ māma zhēn niánqīng 你妈妈真年轻!	Nǐ māma shì zhēn niánqīng 你妈妈是真年轻! ×
Your mum is really young!	

Unit 5

duōshao

Question word 多少

Although the question word 多少 is often translated as "how many" or "how much" in English, it can also be used to ask about telephone numbers and room numbers.

Subject	Verb	Question word
Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ 你的电话号码	shì 是	duōshao 多少?
What's your telephone number?		
Nǐ de fángjiān hào 你的房间号	shì 是	duōshao 多少?
What's your room number?		

Word order of Chinese addresses

An address in Chinese is written as follows. It starts with the biggest geographical component and ends with the smallest, followed by the name of the recipient.

Country	Province	City	Road	Number	Post code
Zhōngguó 中国	Guǎngdōng 广东 Shěng 省	Guǎngzhōu 广州 Shì 市	Huāyuán 花园 Lù 路	yībǎilíngè 102 hào 号	510000

The word order of Chinese addresses is exactly the opposite of what is usually used in western countries, where the address starts with the name of the recipient and continues from the smallest geographical component to the biggest.

The pronunciation of the number "1"

"1" is often pronounced as "yāo" in telephone, room and bus numbers. If a number contains the same figure (including 0) two or more times in succession, each should be read separately. For example, 119 is read "yāo yāo jiǔ", 1200 is read "yāo èr líng líng".

Unit 6

Months and dates

⋮		1		1	
⋮		2		2	
2008	nián 年	3	yuè 月	3	rì hào 日/号
⋮		⋮		⋮	
⋮		12		31	

In Chinese, a calendar year is expressed as four separate numbers followed by the word 年 (year), for example, 二〇一〇年, 一九五八年.

The names of the twelve months are expressed as cardinal numbers followed by the word 月 (month).

Yīyuè 一月	January	Qīyuè 七月	July
Èryuè 二月	February	Bāyuè 八月	August
Sānyuè 三月	March	Jiǔyuè 九月	September
Sìyuè 四月	April	Shíyuè 十月	October
Wūyuè 五月	May	Shíyīyuè 十一月	November
Liùyuè 六月	June	Shí'èryuè 十二月	December

Dates are expressed as cardinal numbers from 1 to 31 followed by the word 日 (day, written form) or 号 (day, spoken form). For example,

qī rì qī hào èr shí yī rì èr shí yī hào
七日 (七号) 二十一日 (二十一号)

The word order for expressing dates in Chinese is year—month—day. For example,

Year	Month	Day
yī jiǔ qī bā nián 一九七八年	Liùyuè 六月	jiǔ rì 九日
9 June 1978		
yī jiǔ sì wǔ nián 一九四五年	Bāyuè 八月	èrshí'èr rì 二十二日
22 August 1945		

Xīngqī 星期

yī 一	èr 二	sān 三	sì 四	wǔ 五	liù 六	rì tiān 日/天
---------	---------	----------	---------	---------	----------	----------------

The days of the week from Monday to Saturday are expressed as 星期 followed by the cardinal numbers from 1 to 6. Sunday is expressed as 星期日 (written form) or 星期天 (spoken form).

Xīngqīyī 星期一	Monday	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Friday
Xīngqī'èr 星期二	Tuesday	Xīngqīliù 星期六	Saturday
Xīngqīsān 星期三	Wednesday	Xīngqīrì tiān 星期日/天	Sunday
Xīngqīsì 星期四	Thursday		

Sentences without verbs

In English, a sentence is incomplete without a verb, but Chinese sentences can sometimes go without a verb.

When expressing age, date, time and price, nouns (noun phrases) and numbers can function directly as nominal predicates after the subject without being preceded by the verb 是.

Subject	Predicate
Mǎkè 马克	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。
Mark is 19 years old.	
Jīntiān 今天	Èryuè jiǔ hào 二月九号。
Today is 9 February.	
Xiànzài 现在	sān diǎn 三点。
It is three o'clock now.	
Yī gōngjīn mǐ 一公斤米	sān kuài sì 三块四。
One kilogram of rice is three <i>yuan</i> and four <i>jiao</i> .	

Note that in the English sentences the verb "be" is needed.

qǐng

Making invitations using 请

In Chinese, to invite or tell someone to do something the verbs 请 and 叫 are used. 请 means to invite someone to do something, usually in a polite manner, while 叫 means to tell or ask someone to do something.

Person making invitation	Verb	Person receiving invitation	Event/Activity
Wǒmen 我们	qǐng 请	tā 她	chī Zhōngcān 吃中餐。
We invited her to have Chinese food.			
Wáng Yù 王玉	qǐng 请	Mǎkè 马克	qù tā jiā 去她家。
Wang Yu invited Mark to her home.			
Lǎoshī 老师	jiào 叫	xuéshēng 学生	shuō Zhōngwén 说中文。
The teacher told the students to speak Chinese.			

Unit 7

Adverbial expressions of time

The adverbial expressions of time can be put either after or before the subject in a sentence.

For example, "I sleep at eleven." can be expressed as:

Subject	Adverbial of time	Predicate
wǒ 我	shíyī diǎn 十一点	shuìjiào 睡觉。

or

Adverbial of time	Subject	Predicate
shíyī diǎn 十一点	wǒ 我	shuìjiào 睡觉。

If there is more than one adverbial expression of time in a sentence, the time word denoting the biggest time unit usually goes first.

Adverbial of time	Subject	Predicate
Míngtiān wǎnshàng qī diǎn 明天晚上七点	wǒmen 我们	zài diànyǐngyuàn 在电影院 ménkǒu jiàn 门口见。
We meet at the entrance of the cinema at seven tomorrow evening.		

Different ways of telling the time

The ways of telling the time in Chinese and English are very similar.

2:00	—	liǎng diǎn 两点
2:05	—	liǎng diǎn wǔ fēn 两点五分
2:25	—	liǎng diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn 两点二十五分
2:30	—	liǎng diǎn bàn 两点半

When the minute hand points to "6" on a clock, we can use 三十分 or 半 which means "half an hour".

2:45	—	liǎng diǎn sān kè chà yī kè sān diǎn 两点三刻 / 差一刻三点
------	---	--

刻 means "a quarter of an hour".

When the minute hand points to a number larger than six, we can use the expression "... minutes to ... (the next hour)". For example, 2:45 can be expressed in three ways in Chinese:

- liǎng diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn
1 两点四十五分
- liǎng diǎn sān kè
2 两点三刻
- chà yī kè sān diǎn (a quarter to three)
3 差一刻三点 (a quarter to three)

yào

Expressing future tense with 要

In Chinese, verbs do not change form to express tenses. The future tense in Chinese can be expressed by putting the verb 要 before the main verb. When 要 is used in front of another verb, it functions as a modal verb indicating future tense or the desire to do something. It is often used to express future plans.

Subject	Modal verb	Predicate
wǒ 我	yào 要	qù yínháng 去银行。
I am going to the bank.		
wǒ 我	yào 要	chī Zhōngcān 吃中餐。
I want to eat Chinese food.		
tā 她	yào 要	qù Riběn 去日本。
She is going to Japan.		

Unit 8

Measure words

The measure word 个 is used extensively for people or objects, both real and abstract.

People:	yī gè péngyou 一个朋友	a friend
Real objects:	yī gè píngguǒ 一个苹果	an apple
Abstract objects:	yī gè jiéguǒ 一个结果	a result

The measure word 件 is used for clothing, objects in general or abstract things.

Clothing:	yī jiàn máoyī 一件毛衣	a sweater
Objects in general:	yī jiàn lǐwù 一件礼物	a gift
Abstract things:	yī jiàn gōngzuò 一件工作	a piece of work

The measure word 条 is used for long and narrow objects, including animals or body parts.

Long and narrow objects:	yī tiáo kùzi 一条裤子	a pair of trousers
Animals:	yī tiáo yú 一条鱼	a fish
Body parts:	yī tiáo tuǐ 一条腿	a leg

The measure word 双 is used for things that come in pairs, including body parts.

Body parts:	yī shuāng shǒu 一双手	a pair of hands
Objects:	yī shuāng wàzi 一双袜子	a pair of socks

èr liǎng

Numerals 二 / 两

二 is used:

- when counting, e.g. yī, èr, sān,
一、二、三、.....
- for expressing ordinal arrangement, e.g. dì-èr gè rén
第二个人
- as the last digit of a numerical expression, e.g. jiǔshí'èr
九十二

两 is used for expressing quantity, e.g. liǎng běn shū
两本书

Expressing past tense using 了

The past tense in Chinese can be expressed by putting the particle 了 after the main verb. Note that this structure is not the exact equivalent of past tense in English because it only indicates the completion of an action, and does not point out specifically that the action happened in the past.

Subject	Verb	Particle	Object
Wǒ 我	mǎi 买	le 了	yī běn shū 一本书。
I bought a book.			
Wǒ 我	chī 吃	le 了	Zhōngcān 中餐。
I ate Chinese food.			

Unit 9

Expressing existence using 有

The verb 有 has several meanings. The primary one means "have". For example,

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun phrase
Tā 她	yǒu 有	yī gè gēge 一个哥哥。
She has an elder brother.		
Wǒ 我	yǒu 有	hěn duō shū 很多书。
I have many books.		

The subject of 有, the possessor, is usually a living creature, but it can also be an inanimate object. For example,

Shuǐ lǐ yǒu hěn duō yú
水里有 很多鱼。 There are many fish in the water.

有 indicates existence if the subject is a nominal expression denoting location or time. The object of 有 is the person or thing concerned.

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun phrase
Fùjìn 附近	yǒu 有	chāoshì 超市。
There is a supermarket nearby.		
Fángzi li 房子里	yǒu 有	rén 人。
There is someone in the house.		
Míngtiān 明天	yǒu 有	zúqiú bǐsài 足球比赛。
There is a football match tomorrow.		

The negative form of 有 is 没有. For example,
 Fùjìn méiyǒu chāoshì
 附近 没有 超市。 There is no supermarket nearby.

Asking questions using 有没有

没有 is the negative form of the verb 有, and we can use the phrase 有没有 in affirmative-negative questions. For example,

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun
Nǐ 你	yǒu méiyǒu 有没有	qián 钱?
Do you have any money?		
Fángzi li 房子里	yǒu méiyǒu 有没有	rén 人?
Is there anybody in the house?		

Expressing locations with the verb 在

The word 在 has many different uses. It can be used as a verb to indicate the location of an object or a person, meaning "at/in". To negate, just put the negation word 不 before the verb 在.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverb	Verb	Noun phrase
Xǐshǒujiān 洗手间		zài 在	shūdiàn qiánbian 书店 前边。
The toilet is in front of the bookshop.			
Dìtiězhàn 地铁站	bù 不	zài 在	gōngyuán de nánbian 公园 的 南边。
The subway station is not to the south of the park.			

Unit 10

Alternative questions with 还是

An alternative question is formed by linking two alternative options with the conjunction 还是. The respondent is expected to choose one or the other option. For example,

Nǐ xǐhuan Zhōngguó háishi xǐhuan Měiguó
 你 喜欢 中国 还是 喜欢 美国?

Do you like China or the US?

Wǒ xǐhuan Zhōngguó
 我 喜欢 中国。

I like China.

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù háishi zuò chūzūchē qù
 我们 坐 地铁 去 还是 坐 出租车 去?

Shall we go by subway or by taxi?

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù
 我们 坐 地铁 去。
 We'll go by subway.

The verb in the second option may be omitted if the same verb is used in both options.

Wǒmen chī Zhōngcān háishi chī Hánguó cài?
 我们 吃 中餐 还是 (吃) 韩国菜?
 Shall we eat Chinese food or Korean food?

Questions ending with 好吗

好吗 is used after stating an idea or suggestion. Questions ending with 好吗 are used to ask for someone's opinion.

Wǒmen qù chī Zhōngcān 我们去 吃 中餐 ,	hǎoma 好吗?
We will go and have Chinese food, OK?	
Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù 我们 坐 地铁 去 ,	hǎoma 好吗?
We go there by subway, OK?	

If the respondent agrees to the suggestion, he may say 好 or 好吧. But he can also use "……吧" to indicate an alternative suggestion, which is used here to soften the tone of the answer. For example,

Wǒmen qù chī Zhōngcān hǎo ma
 我们去 吃 中餐 , 好吗?
 We go to have Chinese food, OK?

Hǎo Hǎo ba
 好。/ 好吧。(showing agreement)
 All right.

Wǒmen qù chī Hánguó cài ba
 我们去 吃 韩国菜 吧。(giving an alternative suggestion)
 Let's go and have Korean food.

Expressing superlatives with 最

最 is an adverb that can be used before an adjective, a verb or a location word to indicate the superlative degree. For example,

zuì hǎo 最好	the best
zuì xǐhuan 最喜欢	like the best
zuì nánbian 最南边	the very south

Using the particle 吧

吧 can be used at the end of a sentence to express different moods, including command, approval, request and suggestion.

Command	Mǎshàng qù shàngxué ba 马上去上学吧! Go to school immediately!
Approval	Wǒmen jiù zhèyàng zuò ba 我们就这样做吧。 Let's do it this way.
Request	Qǐng nǐ zǒu ba 请你走吧。 Please go away.
Suggestion	Xiànzài bù zǎo le wǒmen zǒu ba 现在不早了，我们走吧。 It's getting late now, let's go.

Unit 11

Using modal verbs 可以 / 会

The modal verb 可以 is used before another verb to express ability or permission.

When 可以 indicates the ability to do something, it can be translated into English as "can" or "be able to".

Wǒ kěyǐ shuō Yīngyǔ 我可以说英语。	I can speak English.
Tā kěyǐ chī wǔ wǎn fàn 他可以吃五碗饭。	He can eat five bowls of rice.

When 可以 indicates permission, it can be translated into English as "may" or "be allowed to".

Nǐ kěyǐ jìnlái 你可以进来。	You may come in.
Nǐ kěyǐ zǒu le 你可以走了。	You may leave now.

The modal verb 会 precedes another verb to indicate the ability to do something.

Tā huì shuō Hànyǔ 她会讲汉语。	She can speak Chinese.
Tā huì yóuyǒng 他会游泳。	He can swim.

While both 可以 and 会 can be used to mean the ability to do something, 可以 usually expresses general and physical capability, and 会 emphasizes skills acquired through learning and practice.

Pivotal sentences

A pivotal sentence has two verbs, the object of the first verb functioning at the same time as the subject of the second verb. For example,

Lǎoshī xīwàng wǒmen xué Zhōngwén 老师希望我们学中文。
Wǒ qǐng nǐ chīfàn 我请你吃饭。

The first objects 我们 and 你 function as pivots of the above sentences because each of them connects the first half of the sentence with the second.

Talking about past actions with 过

过 is used after verbs to indicate that something happened in the past.

Mǎkè qùguo Zhōngguó 马克去过中国。	Mark has been to China.
Ānnà chīguo Riběncài 安娜吃过日本菜。	Anna has eaten Japanese food.

In a negative sentence, 没 (有) is used before the main verb to indicate that something has not happened.

Wǒ méi yǒu kànguo zhè běn shū 我没(有)看过这本书。	I have not read this book.
--	----------------------------

Unit 12

Expressing alternatives using 或者 / 还是

The conjunctions 或者 and 还是 mean "or". They are used to connect clauses suggesting two alternatives or possibilities.

或者 can only be used in declarative sentences, whereas 还是 is mainly used in questions.

Wǒ 我	xiǎng qù Běijīng 想去北京	huòzhě 或者	Shànghǎi 上海。
I want to go to Beijing or Shanghai.			
Wǒmen 我们	dǎsuan sān diǎn 打算三点	huòzhě 或者	sān diǎn bàn qù 三点半去。
We plan to go at three or half past three.			
Nǐ 你	xiǎng xué jīngjù 想学京剧	háishì 还是	Zhōngguó gōngfu 中国功夫?
Do you want to learn Beijing opera or Chinese kung fu?			
Nǐ 你	dǎsuan mǎi dàyī 打算买大衣	háishì 还是	qúnzi 裙子?
Do you plan to buy a coat or a skirt?			

měi dōu
Expressing regular events with 每 ……都……

The word 每 means “every”. It is usually used before numerals and measure words to form phrases like 每个……, 每件……. If the numeral is 一 (one), it is often dropped, for example, 每 (一) 个……, 每 (一) 件…… (every ...).

每 can be used to express specific time reference if it is followed by nouns denoting time, like 年 (year), 月 (month), 天 (day). In this case, the measure word can be omitted.

měi 每	Numeral	Measure word	Nouns denoting time	
měi 每	yī (一)		nián 年	every year
měi 每	liǎng 两		nián 年	every other year
měi 每	yī (一)	(gè) (个)	yuè 月	every month
měi 每	liǎng 两	gè 个	yuè 月	every other month
měi 每	yī (一)		tiān 天	every day
měi 每	liǎng 两		tiān 天	every other day

A sentence containing 每 usually requires the adverb 都, which comes immediately before the verb, to fully express the sense of “wholeness”. Sentences containing this “每……都……” structure have two kinds of word order. The time phrase “每……” can be put either before or after the subject.

Tā 他	měi gè jiàqī 每个假期	dōu huí jiā 都回家。
Měi gè jiàqī 每个假期	tā 他	dōu huí jiā 都回家。
He goes home every holiday.		
Mǎkè 马克	měi gè zhōumò 每个周末	dōu qù páshān 都去爬山。
Měi gè zhōumò 每个周末	Mǎkè 马克	dōu qù páshān 都去爬山。
Mark goes climbing every weekend.		

Picture captions

Unit 1 p17 The Great Wall at Badaling, near Beijing / p20 Martial artists practise kung fu / p23 Cyclists in Beijing / pp24–25 (background) Li River valley, Yangshuo, Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region

Unit 2 p27 A traditional tea ceremony at a resort near Kunming, Yunnan / p30 Traditional clothes on display in Longji, Guangxi / p33 Folk dance on Tian’anmen Square, Beijing / pp34–35 (background) Sunrise on Huangshan (Yellow Mountain), Anhui

Unit 3 p37 Cormorant fisherman on the Li river, Guilin / p40 Policewomen in uniform / p42 Ploughing a terraced rice paddy, Qingkou, Yuanyang, Yunnan / pp44–45 (background) Fields around Jinjiling (Golden Rooster Hill), Luoping County, Yunnan

Unit 4 p47 Rollerskater on the Bund, Shanghai / p50 Bruce Lee statue, Avenue of Stars, Tsim Sha Tsui, Hong Kong / p52 Farmhouse near Guilin / pp54–55 (background) The karst landscape around Guilin

Review 1 p60 The Forbidden City, Beijing

Unit 5 p61 Girl talking on public telephone, Beijing / pp62–63 Doorway of traditional Chinese architecture Style, Beijing / p66 A traditional Chinese courtyard / pp68–69 (background) Sunset by Leifeng Hill, Xihu (West Lake), Hangzhou, Zhejiang

Unit 6 p71 Children play with firecrackers on Lunar New Year / p76 Traditional decorative knotwork / p77 Decorative characters for Spring Festival / pp78–79 (background) The yellow earth landscape of northwest China

Unit 7 p81 Commuters travel by bicycle in Kunming, Yunnan / p86 Zhuang minority woman in Longji, Guilin, Guangxi / p88–89 (background) Musical fountain at Big Wild Goose Pagoda, Xi’an

Unit 8 p91 Ceramics, chopsticks and other decorative wares at a Beijing market / p96 Calligraphy supplies and artwork, Beijing / pp98–99 (background) Yalong Bay, Hainan

Review 2 p104 Tangyue memorial archway, Anhui

Unit 9 p105 Pudong district, Shanghai, with the Oriental Pearl Tower / pp110–111 Busy commute of cars at night / pp112–113 (background) Hukou Waterfall, the Yellow River, Ji County, Shaanxi

Unit 10 p115 Shanghai Maglev Train, the world’s fastest passenger train / pp122–123 (background) Sanya Bay, Hainan

Unit 11 p125 Woman dancing in a Shanghai *linong* alleyway neighbourhood / p130 Decorated dragon boat for Qingming festival / pp132–133 (background) Sky lantern festival, Pingxi, Taiwan

Unit 12 p135 Traditional Chinese theatre cast member, Singapore / p141 Rickshaw drivers wait for customers / pp142–143 (background) Cattle ranching in Habahe (Qaba) County, Xinjiang

Review 3 p148 Ta'er Temple, Xining, Qinghai

Pair work activities pp152–153 Hong Kong harbour tourist cruise boat / p154 Night market in Snake Alley, Wanhua district, Taipei / p155 Bamboo forest / 158–159 Shaolin monk show, Shanghai / p160 Vegetable sellers at market / p161 Beijing opera performer in traditional make-up

Pinyin pronunciation guide

Sound	Words	Example 1	Example 2
Initials			
b	bed	bō 玻	bēi 杯
p	pin	pō 坡	pāi 拍
m	moon	mō 摸	mái 埋
f	fun	fó 佛	fā 发
d	day	dé 得	dā 搭
t	tin	tè 特	tā 他
n	nose	ne 呢	nà 纳
l	long	lè 勒	lā 拉
g	good	gē 哥	gāi 该
k	kind	kē 科	kāi 开
h	hat	hē 喝	hā 哈
j	jug	jī 基	jiāo 交
q		qī 欺	qià 恰
x		xī 希	xiāo 消
zh	bridge	zhī 知	zhā 渣
ch	chin	chī 吃	chá 茶
sh	shirt	shī 诗	shā 沙
r	reduce	rì 日	rén 人
z	"ds" in reads	zī 资	zá 杂
c	"ts" in hats	cí 雌	cā 擦
s	say	sī 思	sè 色
Finals			
a	far	ā 啊	bā 八
o	saw	wō 喔	mò 墨
e	her	é 鹅	chē 车
i	bee	yī 衣	bǐ 比
u	rude	wū 乌	wū 屋
ü	German Fühlen	yū 迂	nǚ 女
ai	eye	āi 哀	bái 白
ei	eight	ēi 欸	féi 肥
ao	cow	áo 熬	bāo 包
ou	oh	ōu 欧	pōu 剖
an	enhance	ān 安	bān 班
en	taken	ēn 恩	běn 本

ang	gang	áng 昂	bāng 邦
eng	sung	hēng 亨	bēng 崩
ong	German Lunge	hōng 轰	dōng 东
ia	yard	ya 呀	xià 夏
ie	yes	yē 耶	bié 别
iao	meow	yāo 腰	jiāo 交
iu	yoga	yōu 优	diū 丢
ian	yen	yān 烟	piān 偏
in	in	yīn 因	bīn 宾
iang	e + yang	yāng 央	niáng 娘
ing	sing	yīng 英	bǐng 丙
iong	German Jünger	yōng 雍	qiōng 穷
ua	guano	wā 蛙	guā 瓜
uo	wall	wō 窝	duō 多
uai	why	wāi 歪	guài 怪
uei		wēi 威	wéi 围
uan	wan	wān 弯	duǎn 短
un	won	wēn 温	kūn 昆
uang	u + ongoing	wāng 汪	guāng 光
ueng		wēng 翁	wèng 瓮
üe	ü + eh	yuē 约	quē 缺
üan	ü + an	yuān 冤	xuān 宣
ün	German grün	yūn 晕	qún 群

Combinations of pinyin initials and simple finals

simple finals	a	o	e	i	u	ü
b	ba	bo		bi	bu	
p	pa	po		pí	pu	
m	ma	mo	me	mí	mu	
f	fa	fo			fu	
d	da		de	dí	du	
t	ta		te	tí	tu	
n	na		ne	ní	nu	nü
l	la		le	lí	lu	lǜ
g	ga		ge		gu	
k	ka		ke		ku	
h	ha		he		hu	
j				ji		jü (ju)
q				qi		qü (qu)
x				xi		xü (xu)

English translations

Unit 1

Vocabulary and listening

Mark: Hello!

Wang Yu: Hello!

Mark: May I ask what your name is?

Wang Yu: I'm Wang Yu. How about you?

Mark: I'm Mark, Mark Johnson. Nice to meet you, Miss Yu.

Wang Yu: Sorry, my family name is Wang.

Reading and writing

I'm Mark Johnson. My Chinese name is Mǎkè. Pleased to meet you all.

Hi, everybody! I'm Anna Pollard. My Chinese name is Ānnà. Very happy to meet you all.

Hello! I am Steve Brown. My Chinese name is Shǐdīfū.

Unit 2

Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Good morning!

Wang Yu: Good morning!

Steve: Are you Japanese?

Wang Yu: No, I am not Japanese.

Steve: Where are you from?

Wang Yu: I'm Chinese. Which country are you from?

Steve: I'm British.

Wang Yu: Do you live in London?

Steve: No, I live in Beijing.

Reading and writing

Do you know them?

They are Hollywood stars, but they are not Americans. Hayden Christensen is Canadian. Charlize Theron is South African. Russell Crowe is from New Zealand. Nicole Kidman is from Sydney, Australia. Cate Blanchett is from Melbourne, Australia.

Unit 3

Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Is she your younger sister?

Mark: Yes, she is my younger sister. This is my younger brother.

Yeong-min: Are your younger sister and younger brother students too?

Mark: My younger brother is a student, but my younger sister is a journalist.

Anna: What does your father do?

Mark: He is a doctor.

Anna: Where does your mother work?

Mark: She works at a hospital. My father and mother are both doctors.

Reading and writing

Steve:

Hello!

This is a photo of my family. He is my father. She is my mother. They both work at a hospital. They're both doctors. This is my elder brother, he works at a school. He is a teacher. This is my elder sister. She is a journalist. This is me. I'm a student.

Unit 4

Vocabulary and listening

Anna: Who is he? He's Yao Ming, isn't he?

Wang Yu: Yes.

Anna: Where is he from?

Wang Yu: Shanghai, but now he lives in the US.

Anna: How old is he? Thirty-five years old?

Wang Yu: I don't know.

Anna: He's so tall!

Wang Yu: And also very handsome, and very cool! He is my favourite basketball player!

Reading and writing

Name: Wang Yu Age: 20 years old
Place of birth: Beijing Nationality: Chinese
Email: wangyu0521@DC.com
Favourite animal: panda—cute!
Favourite athlete: Yao Ming—very handsome!
Favourite actor: Bruce Lee—really cool!

Unit 5

❖ Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Steve, is your phone number 55546998?

Steve: Yes, this is my home phone number.

Yeong-min: What's your mobile phone number?

Steve: My mobile phone number is 12081345761.

Yeong-min: Where do you live?

Steve: I live at 19 Park Road.

Yeong-min: What's your email address?

Steve: steve@DC.com.

❖ Reading and writing

Inbox

This is my new address and phone number: Room 506, Student Dormitory, 23 University Road. You can call me on the phone.

Sender: Mark 16628958763

Inbox

Received. Thanks! Does Anna also live on University Road?

Sender: Wang Yu 11872356725

Inbox

No, she lives on Park Road.

Sender: Mark 16628958763

Unit 6

❖ Vocabulary and listening

Mark: Yeong-min, 9 February is Wang Yu's birthday.

Yeong-min: Really? What date is it today?

Mark: Today is 5 February.

Yeong-min: What day of the week is the ninth?

Mark: Sunday. We'll invite her to have a meal. How about that?

Yeong-min: OK. Where shall we go?

Mark: How about "Mama's Kitchen"? The Chinese food there is very tasty.

Yeong-min: OK, no problem.

❖ Reading and writing

3-9 June

Sunday

9:00~12:00 a.m. play basketball

6:00~9:00 p.m. meet Wang Yu's elder brother

Monday

9:00~12:00 a.m. read books

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to work

Tuesday

12:00~3:00 p.m. study Chinese

6:00~9:00 p.m. eat Chinese food with Mark

Wednesday

9:00~12:00 a.m. go to hospital

3:00~6:00 p.m. read books

Thursday

9:00~12:00 a.m. meet my teacher

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to work

Friday

12:00~3:00 p.m. study Chinese

6:00~9:00 p.m. go to Steve's birthday party

Saturday

9:00~12:00 a.m. meet Mark

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to Wang Yu's new home

Unit 7

❖ Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Yu, do you have some free time this weekend?

Wang Yu: I'm going to see my grandpa on Sunday.

Steve: What are your plans for Saturday?

Wang Yu: I don't have any.

Steve: Let's go and see a movie together, OK?

Wang Yu: What movie?

Steve: A Chinese film. The film's title is "Family".

Wang Yu: OK. What time?

Steve: The movie starts at eight thirty. How about we meet at the entrance of the cinema at eight?

Wang Yu: Great. I want to invite my friend, too, is that OK?

Steve: No problem. See you at eight tomorrow evening!

Anna: Wang Yu, is this expensive?

Wang Yu: It's not expensive. Buy this one then.

Anna: OK. Here is the money.

Shop assistant: Thank you.

Reading and writing

Weekend planner

Saturday		Things to do
Morning	8: 45	study English
Noon	12: 30	eat Japanese food with friends
Afternoon	3: 15	go jogging with brother
Evening	8: 00	see a movie with Steve, meet at the entrance of the cinema
Reminder	write Mark an email	
Sunday		Things to do
Morning	10: 15	learn singing
Noon	12: 00	see grandpa and grandma
Afternoon	4: 45	go to university to exercise
Evening	6: 00	eat dinner at home
	8: 00	study English
Reminder	invite music teacher to a concert; write a birthday card for Mark; write a blog entry	

Reading and writing

Beijing Life

Thursday 2 July

This is my favourite bookshop in Beijing. I like reading!

This clothing market is far away, but the prices are low. On Sunday I bought a pair of trousers for twenty *yuan*, very cheap. I bought my elder brother a T-shirt. He likes both black and white T-shirts.

This is a famous shopping centre called the Village. Last month I bought a pair of shoes and a coat here. Every weekend, there are a lot of people here.

This is me and Xiaoxiao. Xiaoxiao is a shop assistant at the supermarket. I come here to buy things every Sunday morning.

Unit 8

Vocabulary and listening

Shop assistant: May I ask, what kind of clothes do you want to buy?

Anna: I want to buy a skirt.

Shop assistant: Please come this way ... How about this one?

Anna: It's too red!

Shop assistant: Is this one all right?

Anna: I don't like blue. Is there a black one?

Shop assistant: How about this black one?

Anna: It doesn't look too good.

Shop assistant: Try this one.

Anna: This one is not bad. How much is it?

Shop assistant: Two hundred and seventy-nine *yuan*.

Anna: Can you make it cheaper?

Shop assistant: Sorry, this price is the lowest.

Unit 9

Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Where does Anna live?

Yeong-min: Number 34, Park Road.

Steve: How do we get there?

Yeong-min: Let's ask a passerby.

Yeong-min: Excuse me, is this Park Road?

Passerby: No. Park Road is behind the post office.

Yeong-min: How do we get there?

Passerby: Head south.

Yeong-min: Is it far from here?

Passerby: Not far.

Steve: Excuse me, is this Park Road?

Passerby: That's right.

Yeong-min: Is there a building number 34 here?

Passerby: Yes, it's near the bank, in front of a bookshop. Go straight ahead for about five minutes.

Reading and writing

1 Flat for rent

18 University Road, second floor. There are three rooms. The flat is very near the university. There is a student dorm to the east, a subway station to the west and a supermarket to the north. There is a cinema nearby. Transport and shopping are both very convenient.

¥4200/month Telephone: 25489076

Contact Miss Zhao

2 Flat for rent

Very cheap!

98 Nanjing Road, eighth floor, 120 square metres. There are a lot of bookshops and cheap restaurants nearby. There is a park to the east and a shopping centre to the west.

¥3500/month Telephone: 69812047

Contact Mr. Ma

Unit 10

Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Steve, where did you buy that T-shirt? It doesn't look too nice!

Steve: Really? This is my favourite T-shirt. I like its colour.

Yeong-min: You need some new clothes. Let's go to the shopping centre together and buy some.

Steve: Is it in Sanlitun?

Yeong-min: Yes.

Steve: How do we go there? By bus or by taxi?

Yeong-min: Let's take the subway. The subway is more convenient.

Steve: OK.

Yeong-min: Shall we go on Saturday or Sunday?

Steve: Saturday.

Yeong-min: OK. And then we'll go for dinner, OK?

Steve: Of course! What restaurants are there?

Yeong-min: There are Italian restaurants and also Japanese restaurants.

Steve: Let's eat Italian food.

Yeong-min: Great. Italian food is my favourite!

Reading and writing

Travel plans

Time of travel	Summer holiday (the first week of the holiday)
Where to go	Guilin
How to go	by train (convenient, cheap)
People to invite	Steve and Mark
What to do	river cruise, shopping, climbing, photography, visiting famous scenic sites

Unit 11

Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Yu, what kind of sports do you like?

Wang Yu: I like basketball, and football too.

Steve: Do you want to watch a football match next month?

Wang Yu: Of course! What teams are playing?

Steve: China and England, at the stadium near our university.

Wang Yu: OK, I'll go with you. I hope China win!

Steve: I hope England win!

Wang Yu: Do you want to do some exercise this weekend?

Steve: What kind of exercise?

Wang Yu: Let's play tennis, shall we?

Steve: Sorry, I don't know how to play tennis, but I can dance. Let's go dancing together.

Wang Yu: I don't like dancing, and I haven't learnt how.

Steve: How about we go swimming?

Wang Yu: OK! Swimming is my favourite.

Steve: Let's go tomorrow morning, is that OK?

Wang Yu: I jog in the morning. Let's go in the afternoon.

Steve: OK. See you tomorrow.

Yeong-min: After we come back to Beijing, we can go to see some Beijing opera.

Steve: Great, I really like watching Beijing opera.

Reading and writing

Students' sport and recreation questionnaire

Name: Mark Age: 19
Gender: male Nationality: Australian

What sports can you do?

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> play football | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> surfing |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> swim | <input type="checkbox"/> skiing |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> play basketball | <input type="checkbox"/> diving |
| <input type="checkbox"/> play table tennis | <input type="checkbox"/> bungee jump |
| <input type="checkbox"/> others | |

How many hours' exercise do you do every week?

- 0 1-2 3-4 5-10

When do you exercise? Five o'clock every afternoon.

Who do you exercise with? Together with friends.

Where do you exercise?

- home school sports ground

Reading and writing

Bob

I plan to travel to China for this year's holiday. There are many fun places in China. But I can only go to one place. My friends said that both Shanghai and Beijing are good. What do you think?

Wang Yu

Go to Beijing. There are two flights from Britain to Beijing every day, which is very convenient.

Peter

Xi'an is my favourite place. I think you should go to Xi'an. You can visit the Terracotta Warriors. Wang Yu, do you think Bob should go to Xi'an?

Wang Yu

Xi'an is a very pretty city that has thousands of years of history.

Bob

Good idea. I like history. Xi'an is not bad. How do I get to Xi'an?

Wang Yu

You can take a plane.

Unit 12

Vocabulary and listening

Anna: Yeong-min, Steve, what are you planning to do for the holidays?

Yeong-min: Every holiday I go travelling.

Steve: I want to travel, too, or maybe go home.

Anna: Don't go home. It's too far away. Let's travel together, OK?

Steve: Where should we go? Singapore or Hong Kong?

Yeong-min: Hong Kong, of course. I like Hong Kong.

Anna: Singapore is too far away. Let's go to Hong Kong. There we can go shopping, and we can go to a concert.

Steve: Let's go to Hong Kong, then.

Yeong-min: How do we get there? By air or by train?

Anna: Of course by air. The plane is very convenient.

Vocabulary list

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
A 埃及	Āiji	<i>n.</i>	Egypt	2	吃饭	chīfàn	<i>v.</i>	have a meal	6
矮	ǎi	<i>adj.</i>	short (height)	4	冲浪	chōnglàng	<i>v.</i>	surf	11
澳大利亚	Àodàliyà	<i>n.</i>	Australia	2	出生地	chūshēngdì	<i>n.</i>	place of birth	4
B 爸爸	bàba	<i>n.</i>	father	3	出租	chūzū	<i>v.</i>	rent out, lease	9
吧	ba	<i>particle</i>	(for making suggestions)	8	出租车	chūzūchē	<i>n.</i>	taxi	10
百	bǎi	<i>num.</i>	hundred	8	厨房	chúfáng	<i>n.</i>	kitchen	6
白色	báisè	<i>n.</i>	white	8	厨师	chúshī	<i>n.</i>	chef	3
班	bān	<i>measure word</i>		12	船	chuán	<i>n.</i>	boat	10
半	bàn	<i>num.</i>	half (an hour)	7	从	cóng	<i>prep.</i>	from	12
棒球	bàngqiú	<i>n.</i>	baseball	11	D 打	dǎ	<i>v.</i>	play (ball game with hands)	6
北边	běibian	<i>n.</i>	north	9	打电话	dǎ diànhuà		make a phone call	5
北京	Běijīng	<i>n.</i>	Beijing	2	打工	dǎgōng	<i>v.</i>	do part-time work	12
蹦极	bèngjí	<i>v.</i>	bungee jump	11	打算	dǎsuan	<i>v.</i>	plan	12
比赛	bǐsài	<i>n.</i>	match, competition	11	大家	dàjiā	<i>pron.</i>	everybody	1
别	bié	<i>adv.</i>	do not	12	大学	dàxué	<i>n.</i>	university	5
兵马俑	Bīngmǎyǒng	<i>n.</i>	Terracotta Warriors	12	大衣	dàyī	<i>n.</i>	coat	8
博客	bókè	<i>n.</i>	blog	7	但是	dànshì	<i>conj.</i>	but	3
不	bù	<i>adv.</i>	not, no	2	当然	dāngrán	<i>adv.</i>	of course	10
不错	bùcuò	<i>adj.</i>	not bad	8	导游	dǎoyóu	<i>n.</i>	tour guide	3
C 菜	cài	<i>n.</i>	food, dish	7	到	dào	<i>v.</i>	get to (a place), arrive	7
餐	cān	<i>n.</i>	cuisine, meal	6	德国	Déguó	<i>n.</i>	Germany	2
参观	cānguān	<i>v.</i>	visit (a place)	10	的	de	<i>structural particle</i>		3
餐厅	cāntīng	<i>n.</i>	restaurant	10	弟弟	dìdi	<i>n.</i>	younger brother	3
长	cháng	<i>adj.</i>	long	4	地方	dìfang	<i>n.</i>	place	12
唱歌	chànggē	<i>v.</i>	sing a song	7	地铁站	dìtiězhàn	<i>n.</i>	subway station	9
超市	chāoshì	<i>n.</i>	supermarket	8	地址	dìzhǐ	<i>n.</i>	address	5
衬衫	chènshān	<i>n.</i>	shirt	8	第一个	dì-yī gè		the first	10
城市	chéngshì	<i>n.</i>	city	12					
吃	chī	<i>v.</i>	eat	6					

* The words in colour are not target words for the units.

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
点	diǎn	<i>n.</i>	o'clock	7	分	fēn	<i>n.</i>	minute	7
电话	diànhuà	<i>n.</i>	telephone	5	分钟	fēnzhōng	<i>n.</i>	minute	9
电视	diànshì	<i>n.</i>	television	7	服务员	fúwùyuán	<i>n.</i>	waiter, waitress	3
电影	diànyǐng	<i>n.</i>	movie, film	7	服装市场	fúzhuāng shìchǎng	<i>n.</i>	clothes market	8
电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	<i>n.</i>	cinema	7	附近	fùjìn	<i>n./adj.</i>	vicinity, nearby	9
电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujiàn	<i>n.</i>	email	7	G 橄榄球	gǎnlǎnqiú	<i>n.</i>	rugby	11
电子邮箱	diànzǐ yóuxiāng	<i>n.</i>	email box/address	4	高	gāo	<i>adj.</i>	tall	4
东边	dōngbian	<i>n.</i>	east	9	高兴	gāoxìng	<i>adj.</i>	glad, happy	1
东西	dōngxi	<i>n.</i>	thing	8	哥哥	gēge	<i>n.</i>	elder brother	3
动物	dòngwù	<i>n.</i>	animal	4	个子	gèzi	<i>n.</i>	(person) height	4
都	dōu	<i>adv.</i>	both, all	3	给	gěi	<i>v./prep.</i>	give, to	5
短	duǎn	<i>adj.</i>	short (length)	4	跟	gēn	<i>prep.</i>	with	6
短裤	duǎnkù	<i>n.</i>	shorts	8	工程师	gōngchéngshī	<i>n.</i>	engineer	3
短信	duǎnxìn	<i>n.</i>	message	5	工作	gōngzuò	<i>n./v.</i>	work, job	3
队	duì	<i>n.</i>	team	11	公共汽车	gōnggòng qìchē	<i>n.</i>	bus	10
对	duì	<i>adj.</i>	right, correct	9	公寓	gōngyù	<i>n.</i>	block of flats, apartment building	5
对不起	duìbuqǐ		sorry	1	公园	gōngyuán	<i>n.</i>	park	5
多大	duō dà		how old	5	购物中心	gòuwù zhōngxīn	<i>n.</i>	shopping centre	8
多少	duōshao	<i>pron.</i>	what, how many/ much	5	广州	Guǎngzhōu	<i>n.</i>	Guangzhou	12
E 二月	Èryuè	<i>n.</i>	February	6	贵	guì	<i>adj.</i>	expensive	8
F 发件人	fājiàn rén	<i>n.</i>	sender	5	桂林	Guīlín	<i>n.</i>	Guilin	10
发送	fāsòng	<i>v.</i>	send	5	国	guó	<i>n.</i>	country	2
法国	Fǎguó	<i>n.</i>	France	2	国籍	guójí	<i>n.</i>	nationality	4
饭馆	fànguǎn	<i>n.</i>	restaurant	9	过	guo		indicator of past actions	11
方便	fāngbiàn	<i>adj.</i>	convenient	9	H 还是	háishi	<i>conj.</i>	or (in a question)	10
房间	fángjiān	<i>n.</i>	room	5	韩国	Hánguó	<i>n.</i>	Korea	2
房子	fángzi	<i>n.</i>	flat, house	9	好	hǎo	<i>adj.</i>	good, OK	1
飞机	fēiji	<i>n.</i>	aeroplane	12	好吃	hǎochī	<i>adj.</i>	tasty	6
飞机场	fēijīchǎng	<i>n.</i>	airport	10					

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
好看	hǎokàn	adj.	good-looking	8
好莱坞	Hǎoláiwū	n.	Hollywood	2
好玩	hǎowán	adj.	fun	12
号	hào	n.	number, date (spoken)	5
号码	hàomǎ	n.	number, code	5
和	hé	conj.	and	3
黑色	hēisè	n.	black	8
很	hěn	adv.	very	1
很多	hěnduō	adj.	a lot of	8
红	hóng	adj.	red	8
后边	hòubian	n.	back	9
护士	hùshi	n.	nurse	3
滑雪	huáxuě	v.	ski	11
黄色	huángsè	n.	yellow	8
回	huí	v.	go back	12
会	huì	v.	can, be able to	11
火车	huǒchē	n.	train	10
火车站	huǒchēzhàn	n.	railway station	10
或者	huòzhě	conj.	or (in a statement)	12
J 几	jǐ	pron.	how many	6
几点	jǐdiǎn		what time	7
计划	jìhuà	n.	plan	7
记者	jìzhě	n.	journalist	3
家	jiā	n.	family, home	3
加拿大	Jiānádà	n.	Canada	2
加油站	jiāyóuzhàn	n.	petrol station	10
假期	jiàqī	n.	holiday	10
价钱	jiàqian	n.	price	8
见	jiàn	v.	see, meet	7

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
件	jiàn	<i>measure word</i>	item, piece	8
见面	jiànmiàn	v.	meet up	6
健身房	jiànshēnfáng	n.	gymnasium	9
交通	jiāotōng	n.	transportation	9
叫	jiào	v.	be called	1
街	jiē	n.	street	5
姐姐	jiějie	n.	elder sister	3
今年	jīnnián	n.	this year	12
今天	jīntiān	n.	today	6
近	jìn	adj.	near	9
京剧	jīngjù	n.	Beijing opera	12
警察局	jǐngchájú	n.	police station	9
景点	jǐngdiǎn	n.	scenic site	10
九月	jiǔyuè	n.	September	6
觉得	juéde	v.	think, feel	12
K 咖啡店	kāfēidiàn	n.	café	9
开始	kāishǐ	v.	start	7
看	kàn	v.	read, see	6
刻	kè	n.	quarter (of an hour)	7
可爱	kě'ài	adj.	cute	4
可以	kěyǐ	v.	may, can	5
肯尼亚	Kěnníyà	n.	Kenya	2
酷	kù	adj.	cool	4
裤子	kùzi	n.	trousers	8
块	kuài	<i>measure word</i>	currency unit of China (yuan)	8
L 来	lái	v.	come	8
篮球	lánqiú	n.	basketball	4
蓝色	lánsè	n.	blue	8
老	lǎo	adj.	old	4

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
老师	lǎoshī	<i>n.</i>	teacher	3	明天	míngtiān	<i>n.</i>	tomorrow	7
离	lí	<i>v.</i>	away from	9	明星	míngxīng	<i>n.</i>	celebrity	2
理发师	lǐfàshī	<i>n.</i>	barber, hairstylist	3	名字	míngzi	<i>n.</i>	name	1
历史	lìshǐ	<i>n.</i>	history	12	墨尔本	Mò'ěrběn	<i>n.</i>	Melbourne	2
联系	liánxì	<i>v./n.</i>	contact	9	墨西哥	Mòxīgē	<i>n.</i>	Mexico	2
连衣裙	liányīqún	<i>n.</i>	one-piece dress	8	M 哪	nǎ	<i>pron.</i>	which	2
了	le	<i>particle</i>		7	哪里	nǎli	<i>pron.</i>	where	2
六月	Liùyuè	<i>n.</i>	June	6	哪儿	nǎr	<i>pron.</i>	where	9
楼	lóu	<i>n.</i>	building, storey	9	那里	nàli	<i>pron.</i>	there	6
路	lù	<i>n.</i>	road	5	那么	nàme	<i>conj.</i>	then, so	12
路人	lùrén	<i>n.</i>	passerby	9	奶奶	nǎinai	<i>n.</i>	grandmother	7
旅馆	lǚguǎn	<i>n.</i>	hotel	9	男	nán	<i>n.</i>	male	11
旅行	lǚxíng	<i>v./n.</i>	travel	10	南边	nánbian	<i>n.</i>	south	9
绿色	lǜsè	<i>n.</i>	green	8	南非	Nánfēi	<i>n.</i>	South Africa	2
律师	lǜshī	<i>n.</i>	lawyer	3	南京	Nánjīng	<i>n.</i>	Nanjing	9
伦敦	Lúndūn	<i>n.</i>	London	2	呢	ne	<i>particle</i>	(used to ask questions)	1
M 妈妈	māmā	<i>n.</i>	mother	3	你	nǐ	<i>pron.</i>	you	1
吗	ma	<i>particle</i>	(used to ask questions)	2	你好	nǐ hǎo		hello	1
买	mǎi	<i>v.</i>	buy	8	你们	nǐmen	<i>pron.</i>	you (plural)	1
毛衣	máoyī	<i>n.</i>	sweater	8	年	nián	<i>n.</i>	year	12
帽子	màozi	<i>n.</i>	hat	8	年龄	niánlíng	<i>n.</i>	age	4
没问题	méi wèntí		no problem	6	年轻	niánqīng	<i>adj.</i>	young	4
没有	méiyǒu	<i>v.</i>	not have	7	牛仔裤	niúzáikù	<i>n.</i>	jeans	8
每	měi	<i>pron.</i>	every, each	8	女士	nǚshì	<i>n.</i>	Ms	1
美国	Měiguó	<i>n.</i>	US	2	P 爬山	páshān	<i>v.</i>	climb a mountain	10
妹妹	mèimei	<i>n.</i>	younger sister	3	拍照	pāizhào	<i>v.</i>	take photos	10
门口	ménkǒu	<i>n.</i>	entrance, doorway	7	排球	páiqiú	<i>n.</i>	volleyball	11
秘书	mìshū	<i>n.</i>	secretary	3	派对	pàiduì	<i>n.</i>	party	6
明年	míngnián	<i>n.</i>	next year	6	跑步	pǎobù	<i>v.</i>	jog	7
					朋友	péngyou	<i>n.</i>	friend	7

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
便宜	piányi	adj.	cheap	8	谁	shéi	pron.	who	4
漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty	12	什么	shénme	pron.	what	1
乒乓球	pīngpāngqiú	n.	table tennis	11	生日	shēngri	n.	birthday	6
平方米	píngfāngmǐ	measure word	square metre	9	生日卡	shēngrikǎ	n.	birthday card	7
Q 七月	Qīyuè	n.	July	6	省	shěng	n.	province	5
骑	qí	v.	ride (bicycle, etc)	10	时候	shíhou	n.	time	11
其他	qítā	pron.	others, other	11	时间	shíjiān	n.	time	7
千	qiān	num.	thousand	12	实习	shíxí	v.	work as an intern	12
钱	qián	n.	money	8	市	shì	n.	city	5
前边	qiánbian	n.	front	9	事	shì	n.	thing, matter	7
潜水	qiánshuǐ	v.	dive	11	试	shì	v.	try	8
请	qǐng	interj./v.	please, invite	1	是	shì	v.	be	1
请问	qǐngwèn		may I ask, excuse me	1	收到	shōudào	v.	receive	5
球	qiú	n.	ball, ball game	11	收件箱	shōujiànxiāng	n.	inbox	5
区	qū	n.	district	5	手机	shǒujī	n.	mobile phone	5
曲棍球	qūgùnqiú	n.	hockey	11	售货员	shòuhuòyuán	n.	shop assistant	8
去	qù	v.	go	6	书	shū	n.	book	6
去年	qùnián	n.	last year	6	书店	shūdiàn	n.	bookshop	8
裙子	qúnzi	n.	skirt	8	暑假	shǔjià	n.	summer holiday	10
R 然后	ránhòu	conj.	then	10	帅	shuài	adj.	handsome	4
人	rén	n.	people	2	双	shuāng	measure word	pair	8
认识	rènshi	v.	know, get to know	1	说	shuō	v.	say	12
日	rì	n.	date (written)	6	宿舍	sùshè	n.	dormitory	9
日本	Rìběn	n.	Japan	2	岁	suì	n.	year(s) old	4
S 三里屯	Sānlǐtún	n.	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	10	T 他	tā	pron.	he, him	3
商店	shāngdiàn	n.	shop	9	它	tā	pron.	it	10
上班	shàngbān	v.	go to work	6	她	tā	pron.	she, her	3
上个	shàngge		last	8	他们	tāmen	pron.	they, them	2
上海	Shànghǎi	n.	Shanghai	4	太	tài	adv.	very, too	7
上午	shàngwǔ	n.	morning	7	太太	tàitai	n.	Mrs	1

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
泰国	Tàiguó	<i>n.</i>	Thailand	2	现在	xiànzài	<i>n.</i>	now	4
踢	tī	<i>v.</i>	play (with feet), kick	11	香港	Xiānggǎng	<i>n.</i>	Hong Kong	12
T恤	tīxù	<i>n.</i>	T-shirt	8	想	xiǎng	<i>v.</i>	think, want	11
体育场	tīyùchǎng	<i>n.</i>	stadium, sports ground	11	小姐	xiǎojiě	<i>n.</i>	Miss	1
条	tiáo	<i>measure word</i>		8	小时	xiǎoshí	<i>n.</i>	hour	11
跳舞	tiàowǔ	<i>v.</i>	dance	11	鞋	xié	<i>n.</i>	shoes	8
听	tīng	<i>v.</i>	listen	7	写	xiě	<i>v.</i>	write	7
停车场	tíngchēchǎng	<i>n.</i>	car park	10	谢谢	xièxie	<i>v.</i>	thank you	5
同学	tóngxué	<i>n.</i>	schoolmate	1	新	xīn	<i>adj.</i>	new	5
头发	tóufa	<i>n.</i>	hair	4	新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	<i>n.</i>	Singapore	12
退出	tuìchū	<i>v.</i>	exit, go back	5	新西兰	Xīnxīlán	<i>n.</i>	New Zealand	2
W 晚饭	wǎnfàn	<i>n.</i>	dinner	7	星期	xīngqī	<i>n.</i>	week	6
晚上	wǎnshàng	<i>n.</i>	evening	7	星期二	Xīngqī' èr	<i>n.</i>	Tuesday	6
往	wǎng	<i>prep.</i>	towards	9	星期六	Xīngqīliù	<i>n.</i>	Saturday	6
网球	wǎngqiú	<i>n.</i>	tennis	11	星期日	Xīngqīrì	<i>n.</i>	Sunday (written)	6
围巾	wéijīn	<i>n.</i>	scarf	8	星期三	Xīngqīsān	<i>n.</i>	Wednesday	6
问	wèn	<i>v.</i>	ask	1	星期四	Xīngqīsì	<i>n.</i>	Thursday	6
问卷	wènjuàn	<i>n.</i>	questionnaire	11	星期天	Xīngqītiān	<i>n.</i>	Sunday (spoken)	6
我	wǒ	<i>pron.</i>	I, me	1	星期五	Xīngqīwǔ	<i>n.</i>	Friday	6
我们	wǒmen	<i>pron.</i>	we, us	6	星期一	Xīngqīyī	<i>n.</i>	Monday	6
五月	wǔyuè	<i>n.</i>	May	6	姓	xìng	<i>v./n.</i>	surname, family name	1
X 西安	Xī' ān	<i>n.</i>	Xi'an	12	性别	xìngbié	<i>n.</i>	gender	11
西边	xībian	<i>n.</i>	west	9	姓名	xìngmíng	<i>n.</i>	full name	4
悉尼	Xīní	<i>n.</i>	Sydney	2	熊猫	xióngmāo	<i>n.</i>	panda	4
希望	xīwàng	<i>v.</i>	hope	11	修理工	xiūlǐgōng	<i>n.</i>	mechanic, repairman	3
喜欢	xǐhuan	<i>v.</i>	like	4	休闲	xiūxián	<i>n./v.</i>	leisure, have leisure	11
洗手间	xǐshǒujiān	<i>n.</i>	toilet, washroom	9	需要	xūyào	<i>v.</i>	need	10
下个	xiàge		next	11	学	xué	<i>v.</i>	study, learn	6
下午	xiàwǔ	<i>n.</i>	afternoon	7	学生	xuésheng	<i>n.</i>	student	3
先生	xiānsheng	<i>n.</i>	Mr	9	学校	xuéxiào	<i>n.</i>	school	3

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
Y 颜色	yánsè	<i>n.</i>	colour	10	运动	yùndòng	<i>n.</i>	sports	7
演员	yǎnyuán	<i>n.</i>	actor, actress	4	运动员	yùndòngyuán	<i>n.</i>	athlete	4
要	yào	<i>v.</i>	want	7	Z 在	zài	<i>prep.</i>	at, in	2
药店	yàodiàn	<i>n.</i>	pharmacy	9	早上好	zǎoshang hǎo		good morning	2
爷爷	yéye	<i>n.</i>	grandfather	7	怎么	zěnmē	<i>pron.</i>	how	9
也	yě	<i>adv.</i>	also	3	怎么样	zěnmeyàng	<i>pron.</i>	how about	6
野营	yěyíng	<i>v.</i>	go camping	12	照片	zhàopiàn	<i>n.</i>	photo	3
一点儿	yīdiǎnr	<i>quantifier</i>	a little	8	这	zhè	<i>pron.</i>	this	3
衣服	yīfu	<i>n.</i>	clothes	8	这边	zhèbian	<i>pron.</i>	this way	8
一起	yīqǐ	<i>adv.</i>	together	7	这个	zhège	<i>pron.</i>	this	7
医生	yīshēng	<i>n.</i>	doctor	3	这儿	zhèr	<i>pron.</i>	here	9
一些	yīxiē	<i>quantifier</i>	some	10	这里	zhèli	<i>pron.</i>	here	8
医院	yīyuàn	<i>n.</i>	hospital	3	真	zhēn	<i>adv.</i>	really, so	4
一月	Yīyuè	<i>n.</i>	January	6	真的	zhēn de		really	6
以后	yǐhòu	<i>n.</i>	after	12	知道	zhīdào	<i>v.</i>	know	4
意大利	Yìdàlì	<i>n.</i>	Italy	10	只	zhǐ	<i>adv.</i>	only	12
音乐	yīnyuè	<i>n.</i>	music	7	志愿者	zhìyuànzhě	<i>n.</i>	volunteer	12
音乐会	yīnyuèhuì	<i>n.</i>	concert	7	中餐	Zhōngcān	<i>n.</i>	Chinese food	6
银行	yínháng	<i>n.</i>	bank	9	中国	Zhōngguó	<i>n.</i>	China	2
印度	Yìndù	<i>n.</i>	India	2	中文	Zhōngwén	<i>n.</i>	Chinese	1
应该	yīnggāi	<i>modal v.</i>	should	12	中午	zhōngwǔ	<i>n.</i>	noon	7
英格兰	Yīnggélán	<i>n.</i>	England	11	周末	zhōumò	<i>n.</i>	weekend	7
英国	Yīngguó	<i>n.</i>	UK	2	主意	zhǔyi	<i>n.</i>	idea	12
英语	Yīngyǔ	<i>n.</i>	English	7	住	zhù	<i>v.</i>	live	2
赢	yíng	<i>v.</i>	win	11	自行车	zìxíngchē	<i>n.</i>	bicycle	10
邮局	yóujú	<i>n.</i>	post office	9	走	zǒu	<i>v.</i>	walk, go	9
游览	yóulǎn	<i>v.</i>	go sightseeing	10	足球	zúqiú	<i>n.</i>	football	11
游泳	yóuyǒng	<i>v.</i>	swim	11	最	zuì	<i>adv.</i>	most	4
有	yǒu	<i>v.</i>	have	7	昨天	zuótiān	<i>n.</i>	yesterday	6
有名	yǒumíng	<i>adj.</i>	famous	8	左右	zuǒyòu	<i>n.</i>	about	9
远	yuǎn	<i>adj.</i>	far away	8	坐	zuò	<i>v.</i>	take (a vehicle)	10
月	yuè	<i>n.</i>	month	6	做	zuò	<i>v.</i>	do	3

Discover China

STUDENT'S BOOK ONE 学生用书1

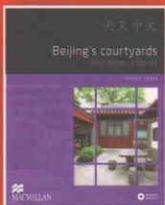
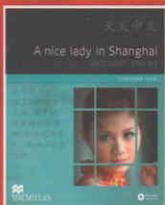
No one could claim that learning Chinese is easy. *Discover China* recognizes the challenges that face students of the Chinese language and applies teaching and learning approaches to make learning effective, meaningful and enjoyable.

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students and employs a communicative approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on pair work, group work and on a wide variety of speaking and listening activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

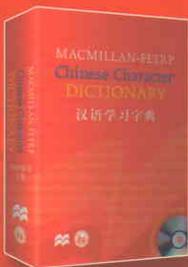
- **A communicative approach** lets students learn by using the language in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally
- **Language in context** presents key vocabulary and language points in situations where students will encounter them in real life
- **Structured, effective learning** based on the sequence 'presentation, practice and production' has activities move from controlled practice to personalized tasks, which facilitates effective learning of the language
- **Inductive grammar teaching** encourages students to discover the language rules of Chinese for themselves by identifying the patterns in targeted language samples
- **Systematic vocabulary and grammar development** through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the HSK Proficiency Test and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework
- **Supported by free online resources** including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes and extra character writing sheets – the support materials allow both teacher-guided learning in the classroom and self-teaching at a pace suited to the individual student

Components of *Discover China* levels 1, 2, 3 and 4:

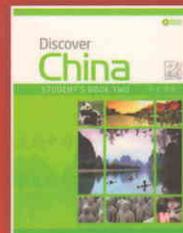
- Comprehensive Student's Book + Audio CD
- Workbook + Audio CD
- Supportive resource website: www.mydiscoverchina.com



Tiantian Zhongwen
graded readers



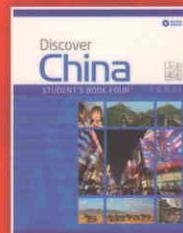
Macmillan-FLTRP
Chinese Character Dictionary



Student's Book 2



Student's Book 3



Student's Book 4




MACMILLAN

